Bosch Video Management System



Table of contents

1	Using the Help	12
1.1	Finding information	12
1.2	Printing the Help	13
2	Introduction	14
3	System overview	17
3.1	Hardware requirements	17
3.2	Software requirements	18
3.3	License requirements	18
3.4	Supported system structures	18
4	Concepts	20
4.1	Configuration Wizard	20
4.2	Enterprise System	20
4.2.1	Scenarios	20
4.2.2	Permissions	23
4.2.3	Types of user groups	24
4.2.4	Licensing	24
4.3	Server Lookup	24
4.4	Remote access	25
4.5	iSCSI storage pool	28
4.6	Alarm handling	28
4.7	DVR devices	30
4.8	Mobile Video Service	30
4.9	BVIP devices	31
5	Supported hardware	32
5.1	Installing hardware	33
5.2	Connecting a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard to Bosch VMS	33
5.2.1	Scenarios for Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connections	33
5.2.2	Connecting a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard to a decoder	35
5.2.3	Updating Bosch IntuiKey keyboard firmware	36
5.3	Connecting Bosch Allegiant Matrix to Bosch Video Management System	37
5.3.1	Bosch Allegiant Connection Overview	37
5.3.2	Configuring the control channel	39
5.3.3	Bosch Allegiant Satellite System Concept	40
5.3.4	Allegiant CCL commands supported in Bosch VMS	41
6	Getting started	44
6.1	Installing the software modules	44
6.2	Using Configuration Wizard	44
6.3	Accessing the system	55
6.4	Using Server Lookup	55
6.5	Configuring remote access	55
6.5.1	Configuring without Enterprise System	55
6.5.2	Configuring with Enterprise System	56
6.6	Activating the software licenses	56
6.7	Starting Configuration Client	57
6.8	Configuring the language of Configuration Client	57
6.9	Configuring the language of Operator Client	57
6.10	Adding a new license	58

en | Table of Contents

4

6.11	Working offline	58
7	Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System	59
8	Configuring Server Lookup	61
9	Managing VRM storage	62
9.1	Adding a VRM device with iSCSI device	62
9.1.1	Adding an iSCSI device	62
9.1.2	Adding a DSA E-Series iSCSI device	63
9.2	Adding a VRM pool	63
9.3	Configuring automatic recording mode on a pool	63
9.4	Configuring an iSCSI device	64
9.5	Moving an iSCSI system to another pool	65
9.6	Adding a LUN	65
9.7	Formatting a LUN	66
10	Managing encoders	67
10.1	Adding an encoder to a VRM pool	67
10.2	Moving an encoder to another pool	68
10.3	Adding a live only encoder	68
10.4	Adding a local storage encoder	68
10.5	Configuring an encoder / decoder	69
10.6	Updating the device capabilities	69
10.7	Configuring failover recording mode on an encoder	70
10.8	Configuring multiple encoders / decoders	71
11	Managing Video Streaming Gateway	72
11.1	Adding a Video Streaming Gateway device	72
11.2	Moving a VSG to another pool	72
11.3	Adding a Bosch camera to a VSG	73
11.4	Adding an ONVIF camera to a VSG	73
11.5	Configuring multicast for VSG	74
11.6	Switching on VSG recording	74
12	Managing NVRs	75
12.1	Adding NVRs, their recorded encoders, and decoders	75
12.2	Configuring NVRs	76
12.2.1	Configuring a Primary NVR	77
12.2.2	Switching an NVR to a Failover NVR	77
12.2.3	Switching an NVR to a Redundant NVR	78
12.2.4	Configuring a Failover NVR	78
12.2.5	Configuring a Redundant NVR	78
12.2.6	Assigning NVRs to Failover NVRs	79
12.2.7	Assigning NVRs to a Redundant NVR	79
12.2.8	Displaying information on an NVR	79
12.2.9	Changing the network address of an NVR / Failover NVR / Redundant NVR	80
13	Managing various devices	81
13.1	Adding devices	81
13.2	Adding a VIDOS NVR	84
13.3	Configuring a decoder for use with a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard	85
13.4	Configuring the integration of a DiBos system	85
13.5	Configuring the integration of a DVR	85
13.6	Configuring a Bosch Allegiant device	86
13.7	Configuring a startup Command Script	86

Bosch Video Ma	anagement System	Table of Contents en	5
13.8	Changing the network address of a workstation		87
13.9	Enabling Forensic Search on a workstation		87
13.10	Assigning an analog monitor group to a workstation		87
13.11	Configuring an analog monitor group		87
13.12	Adding a monitor wall		88
13.13	Configuring a communication device		88
13.14	Configuring a peripheral device		89
13.15	Configuring network monitoring		89
13.16	Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (workstation)		89
13.17	Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (decoder)		89
13.18	Configuring an I/O module		90
13.19	Configuring an Allegiant CCL emulation		90
13.20	Adding a Mobile Video Service		90
14	Configuring the structure		92
14.1	Configuring the Logical Tree		92
14.2	Adding a device to the Logical Tree		92
14.3	Removing a tree item		92
14.4	Managing resource files		93
14.5	Adding a Command Script		94
14.6	Managing pre-configured camera sequences		94
14.7	Adding a camera sequence		95
14.8	Adding a folder		96
14.9	Adding a map		96
14.10	Adding a link to another map		96
14.11	Assigning a map to a folder		97
14.12	Managing devices on a map		97
14.13	Adding a document		98
15	Configuring schedules		99
15.1	Configuring a Recording Schedule		99
15.2	Adding a Task Schedule		100
15.3	Configuring a standard Task Schedule		100
15.4	Configuring a recurring Task Schedule		100
15.5	Removing a Task Schedule		101
15.6	Adding holidays and exception days		101
15.7	Removing holidays and exception days		102
15.8	Renaming a schedule		102
16	Configuring cameras and recording settings		103
16.1	Copying and pasting in tables		103
16.2	Configuring stream quality settings		104
16.3	Configuring camera properties		104
16.4	Configuring recording settings (only VRM and Local Storage)		105
16.5	Configuring recording settings (only NVR)		105
16.6	Configuring PTZ port settings		107
16.7	Configuring PTZ camera settings		107
17	Configuring events and alarms		108
17.1	Copying and pasting in tables		109
17.2	Removing a table row		109
17.3	Managing resource files		109
17.4	Configuring an event		109

en | Table of Contents

6

Bosch Video Management System

Bosch Video Management System		Table of Contents en	7
22.7	Alarm Settings dialog box		139
22.8	Stream Quality Settings dialog box		139
22.9	Options dialog box		140
22.10	Remote Access Settings dialog box		140
22.10.1	Show Port Mapping dialog box		141
23	Devices page		142
23.1	Server List page		143
23.1.1	Add Server dialog box		143
23.2	Initial Device Scan dialog box		143
23.3	NVR & Decoder Scan dialog box		144
23.4	Failover NVR Manager dialog box		144
23.5	IP Device Configuration dialog box		144
23.6	Set IP Addresses dialog box		145
23.7	Set Display Names dialog box		145
23.8	NVRs / Failover NVRs / Redundant NVRs page		146
23.8.1	Global Settings page		146
23.8.2	Disk Storage page		146
23.8.3	Camera Storage page		147
23.8.4	Assigned NVRs page		148
23.8.5	Assigned NVR page		148
23.8.6	Add Network Path dialog box		149
23.8.7	Add Local NVR Drive dialog box		149
23.9	Vidos NVRs page		149
23.10	DiBos page		150
23.10.1	Add DiBos System dialog box		150
23.10.2	Settings page		150
23.10.3	Cameras page		150
23.10.4	Inputs page		150
23.10.5	Relays page		151
23.11	DVR (Digital Video Recorder) page		151
23.11.1	Add DVR dialog box		151
23.11.2	Settings tab		151
23.11.3	Cameras tab		152
23.11.4	Inputs tab		152
23.11.5	Relays tab		152
23.12	Matrix Switches page		152
23.12.1	Connection page		152
23.12.2	Cameras page		152
23.12.3	Outputs page		153
23.12.4	Inputs page		153
23.13	Workstation page		154
23.13.1	Settings page		154
23.13.2	Assigned Analog Monitor Groups page		155
23.14	Decoders page		155
23.14.1	Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box		155
23.14.2	Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box		156
23.15	Analog Monitor Groups page		158
23.15.1	Settings page		158
23.15.2	Advanced Configuration page		159

23.16.1 Molitor Wall dialog box 160	22.16	Maritar Wall naga	160
23.17.1 Communication Devices page 160 23.17.2 Add SMS Device dialog box 161 23.17.3 SMTP Server page 161 23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 162 23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 162 23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs gage 164 23.19.2 Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 164 23.20.2 SNMP page 164 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.21.1 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.1 About Meyboard page 167 23.22.2.1 Inputs page 167 23.22.2.1 Inputs page 167 23.22.2.2 Inputs page <td>23.16</td> <td>Monitor Wall page</td> <td>160</td>	23.16	Monitor Wall page	160
23.17.1 E-mail/SMTP Server dialog box 161 23.17.2 Add SMS Device dialog box 161 23.17.4 SAMTP Server page 161 23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 162 23.18.1 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.19.1 Add SMMP dialog box 164 23.20.1 Add SSMMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SSMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.4 Mobile Video Service page			
23.17.2 Add SMS Device dialog box 161 23.17.3 SMTP Server page 162 23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 162 23.18 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs page 164 23.19.2 SIMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SSMP Trap Receiver page 166 23.20.2 SSMP Trap Receiver page 167 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.1 DADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.25.1 SMP Devices page 168 <td< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></td<>			
23.17.3 SMTP Server page 161 23.17.4 Send Test E-mail dialog box 162 23.18 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 163 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.19.1 Add Simm dialog box 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21.1 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.2.1 Inputs page 167 23.22.1. ADAM page 167 23.22.2. Inputs page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2. Inputs page 167 2			
23.17.4 Send Test E-mail dialog box 162 23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 163 23.18 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19 Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20 SNMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 164 23.20.2 SNMP Page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 166 23.22.1 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.2 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.1 AbAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.4 Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 <tr< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr<>			
23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page 162 23.18 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19 Virtual Inputs page 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.2 SNMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SMMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.1 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 168 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 170			
23.18 POS + ATM page 163 23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs page 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.1 SMMP page 164 23.20.2 SMMP dialog box 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.2 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23.4 Mobile Video Service page 167 23.24.2 Mobile Video Service page 167 23.25.5 VRM Devices page 168 23.26.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 <			
23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box 163 23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.1 Add SMMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 JO Modules page 167 23.22.2 I/D Modules page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.24.2 Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25.2 VRM Devices page 169 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25. VRM Devices page 169 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.26.1 Advanced page 170 23.27.2			
23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page 163 23.18.3 Inputs page 164 23.19 Virtual Inputs page 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.2 SNMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23.2 Relays page 167 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service page 167 23.25 VRM Devices page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2			
23.18.3 Inputs page 163 23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20 SNMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27.2 Pol page 170 23.27.3 Advanced page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 171 23.27.4 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog b			
23.18.4 ATM Settings page 164 23.19.1 Virtual Inputs page 164 23.20.1 SNMP page 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.1 Ads Sign Keyboard page 165 23.21.1 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.2.1 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.23.4 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25.2 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 1			
23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20.1 Add SMMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SMMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SMMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21.1 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SMMP page 170 23.27.2 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.3 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.4 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box 164 23.20 SMMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SMMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SMMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.22.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.23.2 Allogiant CCL Emulation page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series De			
23.20 SNMP page 164 23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service page 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 169 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add SSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 176 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176			
23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box 165 23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 166 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 168 23.26.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.26.2 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add SCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box </td <td></td> <td></td> <td></td>			
23.20.2 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box 166 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2.1 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23.3 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.26.2 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 169 23.26.2 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.3 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.9 Load Balancing p			
23.20.3 SMMP Trap Logger dialog box 165 23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22.1 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27.2 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add ISCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 178 <	23.20.1	Add SNMP dialog box	165
23.21 Assign Keyboard page 166 23.22 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 178	23.20.2		165
23.22 I/O Modules page 167 23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.1 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway 178	23.20.3	SNMP Trap Logger dialog box	165
23.22.1 ADAM page 167 23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settlings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video St	23.21	Assign Keyboard page	166
23.22.2 Inputs page 167 23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 168 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 178 23.27.1 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.29 Assignment tab (23.22	I/O Modules page	167
23.22.3 Relays page 167 23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33	23.22.1	ADAM page	167
23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page 167 23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add ISCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 <	23.22.2	Inputs page	167
23.24 Mobile Video Service page 168 23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add ISCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 175 23.27.8 ign-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180	23.22.3	Relays page	167
23.24.1 Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 168 23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add ISCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) <td>23.23</td> <td>Allegiant CCL Emulation page</td> <td>167</td>	23.23	Allegiant CCL Emulation page	167
23.25 VRM Devices page 169 23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181	23.24	Mobile Video Service page	168
23.26 VRM Settings page 169 23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add ISCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.24.1	Add Mobile Video Service dialog box	168
23.26.1 SNMP page 170 23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 174 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page	23.25	VRM Devices page	169
23.26.2 Advanced page 170 23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.26	VRM Settings page	169
23.27 Pool page 170 23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.26.1	SNMP page	170
23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box 171 23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.26.2	Advanced page	170
23.27.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box 172 23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.27	Pool page	170
23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box 174 23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.27.1	Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box	171
23.27.4 Add isCSI Device dialog box 174 23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 178 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.27.2	Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box	172
23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box 174 23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.27.3	Change Pool for dialog box	174
23.27.6 Basic Configuration page 175 23.27.7 Load Balancing page 176 23.27.8 iqn-Mapper dialog box 177 23.27.9 LUNs page 177 23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box 178 23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page 178 23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.30 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181	23.27.4	Add iSCSI Device dialog box	174
23.27.7Load Balancing page17623.27.8iqn-Mapper dialog box17723.27.9LUNs page17723.27.10Add LUN dialog box17823.28Video Streaming Gateway device page17823.29Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)17823.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.27.5	Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box	174
23.27.8iqn-Mapper dialog box17723.27.9LUNs page17723.27.10Add LUN dialog box17823.28Video Streaming Gateway device page17823.29Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)17823.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.27.6	Basic Configuration page	175
23.27.9LUNs page17723.27.10Add LUN dialog box17823.28Video Streaming Gateway device page17823.29Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)17823.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.27.7	Load Balancing page	176
23.27.10Add LUN dialog box17823.28Video Streaming Gateway device page17823.29Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)17823.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.27.8	iqn-Mapper dialog box	177
23.28Video Streaming Gateway device page17823.29Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)17823.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.27.9	LUNs page	177
Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 23.29 Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 179 23.31 Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 180 23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway) 23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page	23.27.10	Add LUN dialog box	178
23.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.28	Video Streaming Gateway device page	178
23.30Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway)17923.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.29	Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)	178
23.31Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181	23.30		179
23.32Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)18023.33Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway)18123.34Live Only page181			
23.33 Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 181 23.34 Live Only page 181			180
23.34 Live Only page 181			181

	Bosch video Management System Table of Contents en		<u>9</u>	
00.04.0	Add ONWE delegation		100	
23.34.2 23.35	Add ONVIF dialog box		182	
	Local Storage page		182	
24	Encoders / Decoders page		183	
24.1	Unit Access page		183	
24.1.1	Identification / Camera identification		183	
24.1.2	Camera name		184	
24.1.3	Version information		184	
24.2	Date/Time page		184	
24.3	Video Input page		184	
24.3.1	Picture settings		186	
24.3.2	Input termination		186	
24.3.3	Source type		186	
24.4	Installer Menu		187	
24.4.1	Base frame rate		187	
24.4.2	Camera LED		187	
24.4.3	Mirror image		187	
24.4.4	Flip image		187	
24.4.5	Menu button		187	
24.4.6	Heater (dome cameras only)		187	
24.4.7	Reboot device		187	
24.4.8	Factory defaults		187	
24.4.9	Lens Wizard		187	
24.5	Picture Settings		187	
24.5.1	White balance		187	
24.6	Recording Management page		188	
24.7 24.8	Recording preferences page		188	
24.8	VCA page		189	
	Motion detector (MOTION+ only)		190	
24.8.2	Select Area dialog box		190	
24.8.3	Tamper detection		191	
24.9	Audio Alarm page		191	
24.10 24.11	Privacy Masks page		192	
24.11	Camera page		192 194	
24.11.1	Mode page ALC		194	
24.11.2				
24.11.3	Enhance		195 196	
24.12	Lens page		196	
24.12.1	Focus Iris		196	
24.12.2	Zoom		197	
24.12.3	PTZ page		197	
24.13	Prepositions and Tours page		197	
24.14			198	
	Sectors page			
24.16	Misc page		198 198	
24.17	Logs page			
24.18	Audio page		198	
24.19	Relay page		199	
24.20 24.20.1	Periphery page		200	
Z4.ZU.I	COM1		200	

Bosch Video Management System

Table of Contents | en

9

24.21	Network Access page	200
24.22	Advanced page	202
24.22.1	SNMP	202
24.22.2	802.1x	202
24.22.3	RTSP	202
24.22.4	UPnP	202
24.22.5	TCP metadata input	202
24.22.6	Quality of Service	203
24.23	Multicast page	203
24.24	FTP Posting page	204
24.24.1	JPEG posting	204
24.24.2	FTP server	204
24.25	IP v4 Filter	204
24.26	Licenses page	205
24.27	Decoder page	205
24.27.1	Decoder profile	205
24.27.2	Monitor display	205
25	Maps and Structure page	207
25.1	Resource Manager dialog box	208
25.2	Select Resource dialog box	208
25.3	Sequence Builder dialog box	209
25.4	Add Sequence dialog box	209
25.5	Add Sequence Step dialog box	210
25.6	Add URL dialog box	210
25.7	Select Map for Link dialog box	210
26	Schedules page	211
26.1	Recording Schedules page	211
26.2	Task Schedules page	211
27	Cameras and Recording page	213
27.1	Cameras page	213
27.2	Scheduled Recording Settings dialog box (only VRM and Local Storage)	215
27.3	Recording settings pages (NVR only)	216
27.4	Stream Quality Settings dialog box	217
27.5	PTZ Settings dialog box	218
28	Events page	220
28.1	Command Script Editor dialog box	221
28.2	Create Compound Event / Edit Compound Event dialog box	222
28.3	Select Script Language dialog box	222
28.4	Edit Priorities of Event Type dialog box	223
28.5	Select Devices dialog box	223
29	Alarms page	224
29.1	Alarm Settings dialog box	225
29.2	Select Image Pane Content dialog box	225
29.3	Select Resource dialog box	226
29.4	Alarm Options dialog box	226
30	User Groups page	229
30.1	New User Group/Enterprise Account dialog box	230
30.2	User Group Properties page	231
30.3	User Properties page	232
	r r0-	202

Bosch Video M	Table of Contents en	11	
30.4	Add New Dual Authorization Group dialog box		232
30.5	Logon Pair Properties page		233
30.6	Select User Groups dialog box		233
30.7	Camera Permissions page		234
30.8	Control Priorities		235
30.9	Copy User Group Permissions dialog box		235
30.10	Decoder Permissions page		236
30.11	Events and Alarms page		236
30.12	30.12 LDAP Server Settings dialog box		236
30.13	13 Credentials page		238
30.14	Logical Tree page		239
30.15	Operator Features page		239
30.16	Priorities page		241
30.17	User Interface page		241
30.18	Server Access page		242
31	Troubleshooting		244
31.1 Configuring the desired language in Windows			246
31.2			246
31.3	Reducing the number of Allegiant cameras		246
	Glossary		247
	Index		254

1 Using the Help

To find out more about how to do something in Bosch VMS, access the online Help using any of the following methods.

To use the Contents, Index, or Search:

• On the **Help** menu, click **Help**. Use the buttons and links to navigate.

To get Help on a window or dialog:



On the toolbar, click

OR

Press F1 for help on any program window or dialog.

1.1 Finding information

You can find information in the Help in several ways.

To find information in the Online Help:

- 1. On the Help menu, click Help.
- 2. If the left-hand pane is not visible, click the **Show** button.
- 3. In the Help window, do the following:

Click:	То:
Contents	Display the table of contents for the Online Help. Click each book to display pages that link to topics, and click each page to display the corresponding topic in the right-hand pane.
Index	Search for specific words or phrases or select from a list of index keywords. Double-click the keyword to display the corresponding topic in the right-hand pane.
Search	Locate words or phrases within the content of your topics. Type the word or phrase in the text field, press ENTER, and select the topic you want from the list of topics.

Texts of the user interface are marked **bold**.

The arrow invites you to click on the underlined text or to click an item in the application.

Related Topics

Click to display a topic with information on the application window you currently use. This topic provides information on the application window controls.

Concepts provides background information on selected issues.

Caution!

Medium risk (without safety alert symbol): Indicates a potentially hazardous situation.

If not avoided, this may result in property damage or risk of damage to the unit.

Cautionary messages should be heeded to help you avoid data loss or damaging the system.



Notice!

This symbol indicates information or a company policy that relates directly or indirectly to the safety of personnel or protection of property.

Printing the Help 1.2

While using the Online Help, you can print topics and information right from the browser window.

To print a Help topic:

- Right-click in the right pane and select **Print**. The **Print** dialog box opens.
- 2. Click **Print**. The topic is printed to the specified printer.

2 Introduction



1	Menu bar	Allows you to select a menu command.
2	Toolbar	Displays the available buttons. Point to an icon to display a tooltip.
3	Playback controls	Allows you to control instant playback or a camera sequence or alarm sequence.
4	Performance meter	Displays the CPU usage and the memory usage.
5	Time zone selector	Select an entry for the time zone to be displayed in most time related fields. Only available if at least one Management Server in the Logical Tree is located in another time zone as your Operator Client.
6	Slider for Image pane pattern	Allows you to select the required number of Image panes.
7	Image window	Displays the Image panes. Allows you to arrange the Image panes.

8	Image pane	Displays a camera, a map, an image, a document (HTML file).
9	Alarm List window	Displays all alarms that the system generates. Allows you to accept or clear an alarm or to start a workflow, for example, by sending an E-mail to a maintenance person. The Alarm List is not being displayed, when the connection to the Management Server is lost.
10	Monitors window (only available if at least one analog monitor group has been configured)	Displays the configured analog monitor groups. Allows you to switch to the next or previous analog monitor group if available. Note: The Monitors tab is not visible if your Operator Client is connected to more than one Management Server.
	PTZ Control window	Allows you to control a PTZ camera.
11	Logical Tree window	Displays the devices your user group has access to. Allows you to select a device for assigning it to an Image pane.
	Favorites Tree window	Allows you to organize the devices of the Logical Tree as required.
	Bookmarks window	Allows to manage bookmarks.
	Map window	Displays a site map. Allows you to drag the map to display a particular section of the map. If activated, a map is displayed automatically for each camera displayed in an Image pane. In this case, the camera must be configured on a map.

This manual guides you through the basic steps of the configuration and operation with Bosch VMS.

For detailed help and step-by-step instructions read the Configuration Manual and the Operator's Manual or use the Online Help. You find the manuals as PDF files on your Setup CD.

Bosch VMS integrates digital video, audio and data across any IP network.

The system consists of the following software modules:

- Management Server
- VRM recording (Video Recording Manager)
- Operator Client (VRM recording / DiBos DVRs / iSCSI recording / VIDOS NVRs / local recording)
- Configuration Client

To achieve a running system, you must perform the following tasks:

- Install services (Management Server and VRM)
- Install Operator Client and Configuration Client
- Connect to network
- Connect devices to network
- Basic configuration:
 - Add devices (e.g. by device scan)
 - Build logical structure
 - Configure schedules, cameras, events, and alarms
 - Configure user groups

Bosch VMS Archive Player displays exported recordings.

3 System overview

If you plan to install and configure Bosch VMS, participate in a system training on Bosch VMS. Refer to the Release Notes of the current Bosch VMS version for supported versions of firmware and hardware and other important information.

See data sheets on Bosch workstations and servers for information on computers where Bosch VMS can be installed.

The Bosch VMS software modules can optionally be installed on one PC.

Important components

- Management Server (selectable in Setup): Stream management, alarm management, priority management, Management logbook, user management, device state management. Additional Enterprise System license: Managing Enterprise User Groups and Enterprise Accounts.
- Configuration Wizard: Easy and fast setup of a recording system.
- Configuration Client (selectable in Setup): System configuration and administration for Operator Client.
- Operator Client (selectable in Setup): Live monitoring, storage retrieval and playback, alarm and accessing multiple Management Server computers simultaneously.
- Video Recording Manager (selectable in Setup): Distributing storage capacities on iSCSI devices to the encoders, while handling load balancing between multiple iSCSI devices. Streaming playback video and audio data from iSCSI to Operator Clients.
- Mobile Video Service (selectable in Setup): Provides a transcoding service that transcodes the live and recorded video stream from a camera configured in Bosch VMS to the available network bandwidth. This service enables video clients like an iPhone or a Web client to receive transcoded streams, for example for unreliable network connections with limited bandwidth. Not supported on Windows XP.
- Web Client: You can access live and playback videos via Web browser.
- Mobile App: You can use the Mobile App on iPhone or iPad to access live and playback video.
- Bosch Video Streaming Gateway (selectable in Setup): Provides the integration of 3rd party cameras and NVR-like recording, e.g. in low-bandwidth networks.
- Cameo SDK (selectable in Setup): The Cameo SDK is used to embed Bosch VMS live and playback Image panes to your external third-party application. The Image panes follow the Bosch VMS based user permissions.
 - The Cameo SDK provides a subset of the Bosch VMS Operator Client functionalities that enables you to create applications similar to the Operator Client.
- Client Enterprise SDK: The Client Enterprise SDK is meant to control and monitor the behaviour of Operator Client of an Enterprise System by external applications. The SDK allows to browse devices that are accessible by the running, connected Operator Client and to control some UI functionalities.
- Client SDK / Server SDK: The Server SDK is used to control and monitor the Management Server by scripts and external applications. You can use those interfaces with a valid administrator account.
 - The Client SDK is used to control and monitor the Operator Client by external applications and scripts (part of the related server configuration).

3.1 Hardware requirements

See the data sheet for Bosch VMS. Data sheets for platform PCs are also available.

3.2 Software requirements

See the data sheet for Bosch VMS.

Bosch VMS must not be installed on a computer where you want to install Bosch VMS Archive Player.

3.3 License requirements

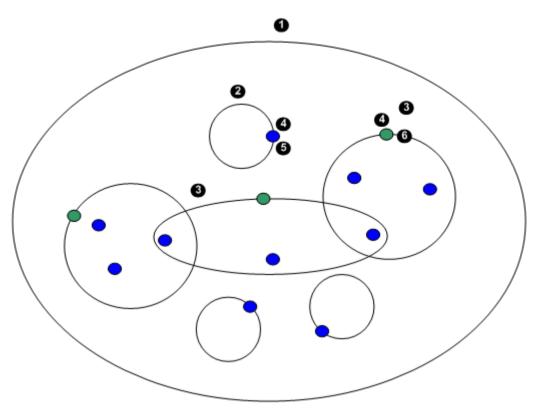
See the data sheet for Bosch VMS for the available licenses.

3.4 Supported system structures

An operator or installer can be responsible for the following system structures:

- Single server system
- Multi server system (Enterprise System)
- Multi system environment

	System with access point for logon
	Single server system, System access point: Management Server
•	Enterprise System, System access point: Enterprise Management Server



1	Multi system environment	4	System access point: Server on which logon request of an operator or installer is processed.
2	Single server system	5	Management Server
3	Multi server system	6	Enterprise Management Server

Use cases for multi system access

Two Bosch VMS features valid for multi system environments are available:

- **Enterprise System**
- Server Lookup

An operator might want to access a multi system environment for the following reasons:

- Configure multiple systems (Server Lookup)
- Maintenance and monitoring of multiple systems (Server Lookup)
- Alert (SMS, Email 3rd party) driven on-demand monitoring of multiple systems (Server Lookup)
- Simultaneous connection to multiple servers for seamless operation of one distributed system (Enterprise System)

Related Topics

- Enterprise System, page 20
- Server Lookup, page 24

4 Concepts

This chapter provides background information on selected issues.

4.1 Configuration Wizard

Intended use for Configuration Wizard is the quick and easy configuration of a smaller system. Configuration Wizard helps you to achieve a configured system including VRM, iSCSI system, Mobile Video Service, cameras, recording profiles and user groups.

User groups and their permissions are configured automatically. You can add or remove users and set passwords.

Configuration Wizard can access Management Server only on the local computer.

You can save an activated configuration for backup purposes and import this configuration later. You can change this imported configuration after import.

You must add iSCSI systems manually on a standard software installation.

Configuration Wizard adds the local VRM automatically both on a standard software installation and on DIVAR IP 3000 and DIVAR IP 7000.

On a DIVAR IP 3000 and on a DIVAR IP 7000 the local iSCSI device is also added automatically if not already available.

On a DIVAR IP 3000 and on a DIVAR IP 7000, a local Mobile Video Service is added automatically if not already available.

Related Topics

Using Configuration Wizard, page 44

4.2 Enterprise System

The target of a Bosch VMS Enterprise System is to enable a user of Operator Client to simultaneously access multiple Management Servers.

Related Topics

- Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System, page 59
- Configuring users, permissions and Enterprise Access, page 117
- Accessing the system, page 55

4.2.1 Scenarios

The following three scenarios are covered.

Scenario 1: A dedicated server plays the role of Enterprise Management Server. This
server has the only task to manage the simultaneous access of an Operator Client
workstation to multiple Management Servers.

An Operator Client workstation logs on to Enterprise Management Server. After successful logon the user of Operator Client has access to the devices of all configured Management Servers according to the permissions in his Enterprise User Group.

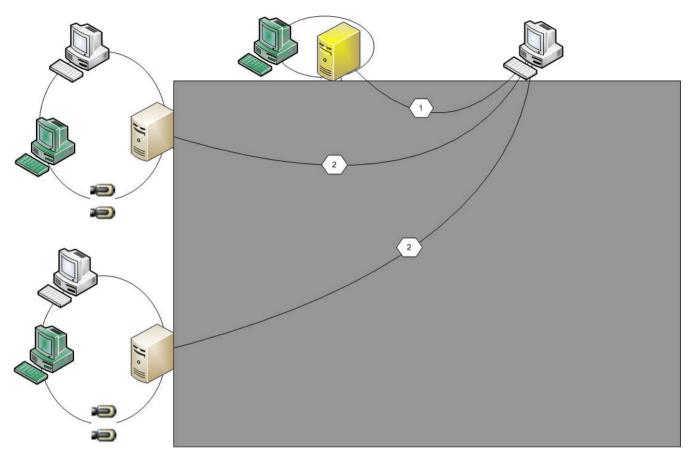


Figure 4.1: Enterprise Scenario 1

# ·	Management Server
	Operator Client
	Configuration Client
=	IP camera / encoder
# - 	Enterprise Management Server

Scenario 2: Combination of Enterprise Management Server and Management Server role.
 In this case the own Management Server must also be part of the Enterprise Management Server configuration.

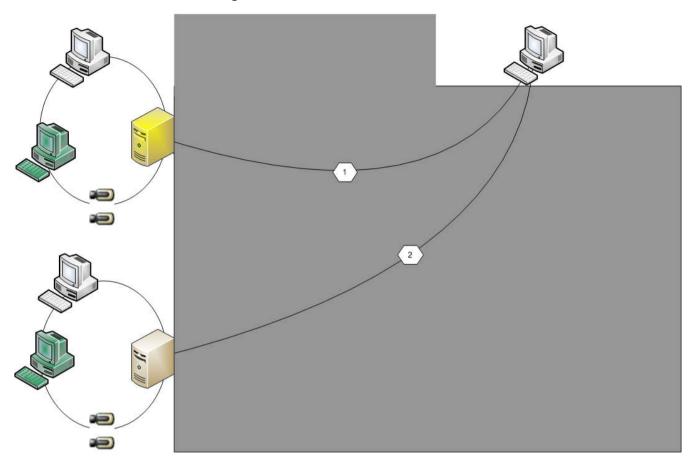
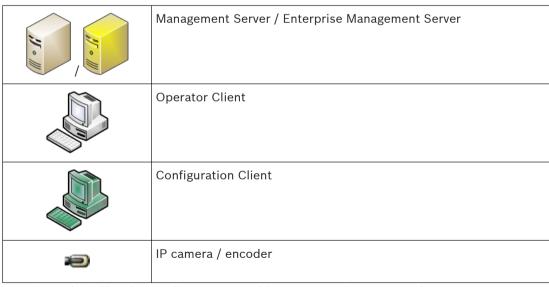


Figure 4.2: Enterprise Scenario 2



- **Scenario 3**: The classic client-server architecture remains supported.

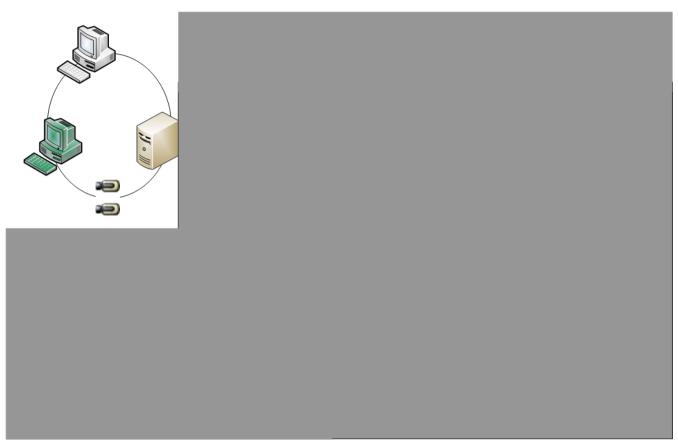


Figure 4.3: Classic Scenario 3

<i>y. M</i>	Management Server
	Operator Client
	Configuration Client
=	IP camera / encoder

4.2.2 **Permissions**

Permissions on an Enterprise System

For an Enterprise System you configure the following permissions:

Operating permissions of Operator Client defining the user interface for operating in the Enterprise System, for example the user interface of the alarm monitor. Use an Enterprise User Group. Configure it on the Enterprise Management Server.

Device permissions that should be available for operating in an Enterprise Management
 Server are defined on each Management Server.

Use Enterprise Accounts. Configure it on each Management Server.

Permissions on a single Management Server

For managing the access to one of the Management Servers, use the standard user group. You configure all permissions on this Management Server in this user group.

You can configure dual authorization user groups for standard user groups and for Enterprise User Groups.

4.2.3 Types of user groups

Туре	Contains	Available configuration settings	Where do you configure?	
User group	Users	- Operating and device permissions	- Management Server	
Enterprise User Group	Users	 Operating permissions Per Management Server: Name of the corresponding Enterprise Access Accounts with logon credentials 	– Enterprise Management Server	
Enterprise Access	-	Device permissionsAccount password	– Management Server	
Dual authorization user group	User groups	- See user groups	- See user groups	
Enterprise dual authorization	Enterprise User Groups	- See Enterprise User Groups	See EnterpriseUser Groups	

Table 4.1: User groups

4.2.4 Licensing

Bosch VMS Enterprise (MBV-BENT) version license is required at each Enterprise Management Server to enable the feature.

For each Management Server assigned to one or more Enterprise User Groups, 1 license (MBV-XSUB) is required.

To update an existing MBV-BPRO Base license to an Enterprise System, you need an Enterprise Upgrade license (MBV-FEUP).

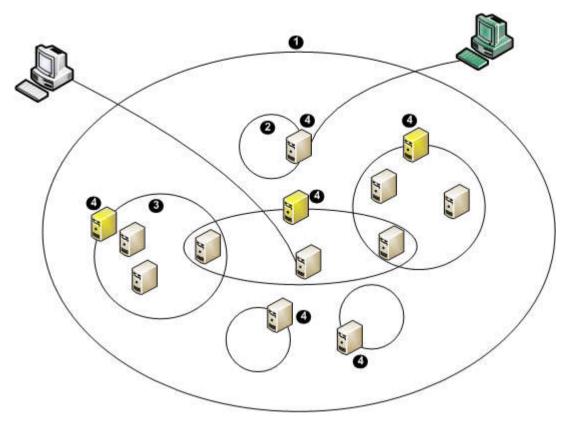
Each Workstation connecting to an Enterprise Management Server requests one MBV-XWST that is licensed at Enterprise Management Server. No additional MBV-XWST license is required on each Management Server if accessed via Enterprise Management Server.

4.3 Server Lookup

A single user of Configuration Client or Operator Client may want to connect to multiple system access points sequentially. This access is called Server Lookup. System access points can be Management Server or Enterprise Management Server.

Server Lookup supports you in locating system access points by their names or descriptions. The user retrieves the list of system access points during logon. He needs to connect to the server hosting the configuration with **Server List (Server List Provider**).

The following image shows an example for Server Lookup in a multi system environment:



1	Multi system environment	11011	Management Server
2	Single server system	#J- ///	Enterprise Management Server
3	Multi server system		Operator Client
4	System access point: Server on which logon request of Operator Client or Configuration Client is processed.		Configuration Client

When a client logs on to Enterprise Management Server, it is possible to get access to all Management Servers of this Enterprise System simultaneously.

Related Topics

- Configuring Server Lookup, page 61
- Server List page, page 143
- Using Server Lookup, page 55

4.4 Remote access

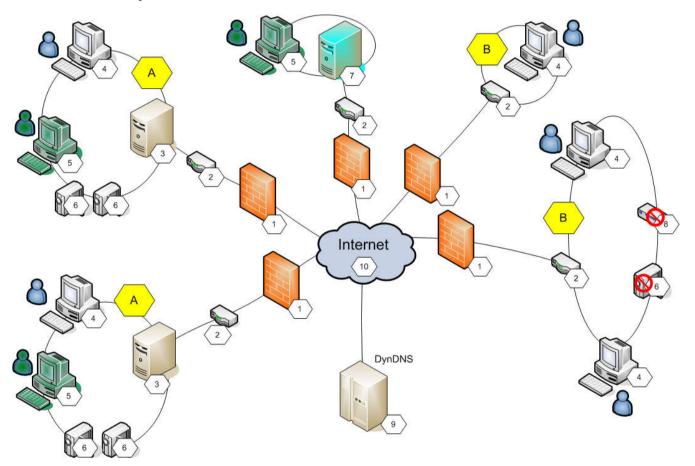
The target of remote access in Bosch VMS is to connect different private networks to public networks.

Multiple networks with private (local) network addresses can be accessed simultaneously or sequentially by Operator Client computers via public interfaces (routers). Task of the router is to translate the incoming public network traffic to the corresponding private network address. The users of Operator Client can access Management Server or Enterprise Management Server and their devices via remote access.

You cannot access the following devices/features via remote access:

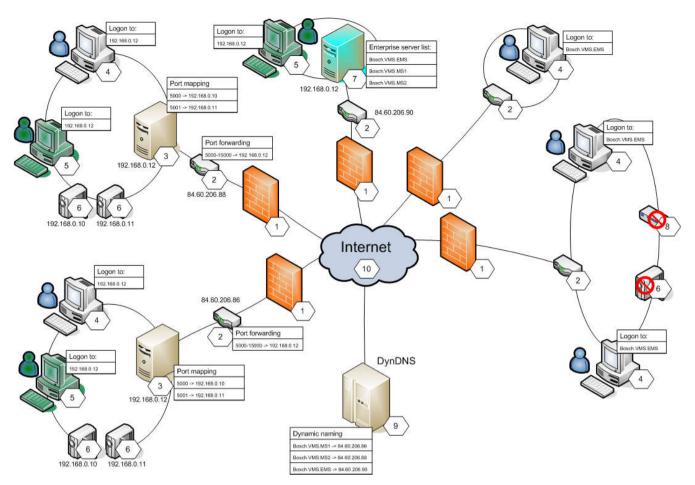
- Playback of local storage
- ONVIF
- DiBos
- Direct iSCSI replay

The following image shows an example of remote access to Bosch VMS devices in a single system:



1	Firewall	6	IP camera / encoder
2	Router	7	Enterprise Management Server
3	Management Server	8	Decoder
4	Operator Client	9	DynDNS Server
5	Configuration Client	10	World Wide Web
Α	Remote network	В	Local network

The following image shows an example of remote access from private network with Enterprise System to remote Bosch VMS systems:



1	Firewall	6	IP camera / encoder
2	Router Port forwarding	7	Enterprise Management Server Enterprise server list
3	Management Server Port mapping	8	Decoder
4	Operator Client Logon to	9	DynDNS Server Dynamic naming
5	Configuration Client Logon to	10	World Wide Web

To enable the remote access of an Operator Client to devices in a remote network, each device is assigned a public port number in addition to the public network address of the router. For access, Operator Client uses this public port number together with the public network address. In the private network the incoming traffic for the public port number is forwarded to the private network address and port number of the corresponding device. You configure the port mapping in Configuration Client for use by Operator Client.



Notice!

Additionally the network administrator must configure the port forwarding on the router of the private network. The network administrator must ensure that remote access via these ports is running outside of Bosch VMS environment.

Related Topics

- Configuring remote access, page 55
- Remote Access Settings dialog box, page 140
- Show Port Mapping dialog box, page 141

4.5 iSCSI storage pool

As of VRM v.3.0, iSCSI storage pools are introduced. A storage pool is a container for one or more iSCSI storage systems that share the same load balancing properties. The encoders / IP cameras that are assigned to a storage pool, are recorded with these common load balancing settings.

A storage pool can be used to have a logical mapping of the network topology to the VRM, for example if you have two buildings, both containing storage and devices, you want to avoid routing the network traffic from one building to the other.

Storage pools can also be used to group cameras and storage systems by an important aspect of view. For example a system contains of some very important cameras and a lot of less important ones. In this case it is possible to group them into two storage pools, one with a lot of redundancy features and one with less redundancy.

You can configure the following load balancing properties for a storage pool:

- Recording preferences (Automatic or Failover)
- Secondary target usage

Secondary target is used in case of **Failover** mode if the assigned primary target fails. If this option is turned off, the recording stops on all devices assigned to this failed primary target.

In case of **Automatic** mode: if one target fails, VRM Server performs an automatic reassign of the related devices to other storages. If VRM Server is down while a target fails, the recording is stopped on the devices currently recording on the failed target.

- Block reservation for downtime
- Sanity check period



Notice!

As of Bosch VMS v. 4.5.5, multiple storage pools per VRM are supported.

Click below to get detailed information on the available pages:

- Pool page, page 170

4.6 Alarm handling

Alarms can be individually configured to be handled by one or more user groups. When an alarm occurs, it appears in the Alarm List of all users in the user groups configured to receive that alarm. When any one of these users starts to work on the alarm, it disappears from the Alarm List of all other users.

Alarms are displayed on a workstation's alarm monitor and optionally on analog monitors. This behavior is described in the following paragraphs.

Alarm flow

- 1. An alarm occurs in the system.
- Alarm notifications appear in the Alarm Lists of all users configured for this alarm. Alarm video is immediately displayed on configured monitors. If it is an automatically displayed alarm (auto pop-up), the alarm video is also automatically displayed on the Operator Client workstation's alarm monitors.

If the alarm is configured as an auto-clear alarm, the alarm is removed from the Alarm List

- after the auto-clear time (configured in the Configuration Client).
- On analog monitors, any quad views from VIP XDs are temporarily replaced by full-screen displays.
- 3. One of the users accepts the alarm. The alarm video is then displayed on this user's workstation (if it is not already displayed via auto pop-up). The alarm is removed from all other Alarm Lists and alarm video displays.
- 4. The user who accepted the alarm invokes a workflow that can include reading an action plan and entering comments. This step is optional - requirements for workflow can be configured by the administrator.
- Finally, the user clears the alarm. This removes the alarm from his Alarm List and alarm display.
 - On an analog monitor group, the monitors return to the cameras that were displayed before the alarm occurred.

Alarm Image window

- To display alarm video, the Alarm Image window replaces the Live or Playback Image window on the monitor that has been configured for alarm display.
- Each alarm gets a row of Image panes. Up to 5 Image panes can be associated with each alarm. These Image panes can display live video, playback video, or maps. On an analog monitor group, each alarm can call up cameras on a row of analog monitors.
 - The number of cameras in the row is limited by the number of columns in the analog monitor group. Monitors in the row that are not used for alarm video can be configured to either continue with their current display or to display a blank screen.
- Higher priority alarms are displayed above lower priority alarms on both analog monitor rows and the Operator Client workstation display alarm rows.
- If the Alarm Image window is completely full of Alarm Image rows and an additional alarm must be displayed, the lowest priority alarms "stack up" in the bottom row of the Alarm Image window. You can step through the stacked alarms with the controls at the left side of the alarm row.
 - You can step through the alarm stacks on analog monitor groups with control buttons in the Monitors window of the Operator Client workstation display. Analog monitors in alarm are indicated by red icons with blinking "LEDs".
 - The alarm title, time, and date can be optionally be displayed on all analog monitors, or only the first monitor in the alarm row.
- 5. For equal priority alarms, the administrator can configure the order behavior:
 - Last-in-First-out (LIFO) mode: in this configuration, new alarms are inserted above older alarms of the same priority.
 - First-in-First-out (FIFO) mode; in this configuration, new alarms are inserted below older alarms of the same priority.
- An alarm's Image row can appear in the Alarm Image window in one of two ways:
 - When it is generated (auto pop-up). This occurs when the alarm priority is higher than display priority.
 - When the alarm is accepted. This occurs when the alarm priority is lower than display priority.

Auto pop-up alarms

Alarms can be configured to automatically display (pop up) in the Alarm Image window, based on the alarm priority. Each user group's live and playback displays are also assigned priorities. When alarms are received with priority higher than that of the user's display, the alarm

automatically displays its alarm row in the Alarm Image window. If the Alarm Image window is not currently displayed, it automatically replaces the Live or Playback Image window on the alarm-enabled monitor.

Although auto pop-up alarms are displayed in the Alarm Image window, they are not automatically accepted. They can be displayed on multiple users' displays simultaneously. When a user accepts an auto pop-up alarm, it is removed from all other users Alarm Lists and alarm displays.

Related Topics

Handling alarms

4.7 DVR devices

This chapter gives background information on the DVR devices that you can integrate in Bosch VMS.

Some DVR models (e.g. DHR-700) support recording from encoders / IP cameras. Other DVR models support only analog cameras.

An encoder / IP camera should not be integrated into the configuration of two video systems (DVRs or video management systems).

If encoders / IP cameras are connected to a DVR which is already integrated in Bosch VMS, these encoders / IP cameras are not detected by the Bosch VMS network device scan. This holds true for the network scan started from within Configuration Client or started from within Configuration Wizard.

If a DVR with connected encoders / IP cameras is integrated in Bosch VMS and these encoders / IP cameras are already added to Bosch VMS, a warning is displayed. Remove these encoders / IP cameras from the DVR or from Bosch VMS.

Configuration Wizard does not add DVR devices with conflicting IP cameras to the configuration.

DVR devices support a limited number of simultaneous connections. This number defines the maximum number of Operator Client users that can simultaneously display videos from this DVR without black Image panes being displayed.

Related Topics

- DVR (Digital Video Recorder) page, page 151

4.8 Mobile Video Service

Mobile Video Service is transcoding video streams from the source to the available band-width of connected clients. The interfaces of the Mobile Video Service are designed to support clients on multiple platforms, for example Mobile devices (IOS; iPad, iPhone) and Windows Internet Explorer HTML client.

Mobile Video Service is based on Microsoft Internet Information Service.

One mobile service may serve several clients synchronously.

For limits refer to data sheet and the Technical Note Mobile Video Service available in the Online Product Catalog for Bosch VMS.

Internet Information Service

Configure the settings for Internet Information Service on the computer where you plan to install MVS for Bosch VMS.

Install and configure Internet Information Service (IIS) before you install Mobile Video Service (MVS). If IIS is not installed, Bosch VMS Setup to install Mobile Video Service aborts.

You select the Mobile Video Service component for installation during Bosch VMS Setup. You cannot install Video Recording Manager (VRM) and Mobile Video Service on the same computer.

We recommend that you do not install Mobile Video Service on the same computer where you install Management Server.

Related Topics

- Adding a Mobile Video Service, page 90
- Mobile Video Service page, page 168

4.9 **BVIP** devices

As of Bosch VMS version 4.5.5 and firmware version 5.70 you can add all BVIP encoders to your system. You use the <Auto Detect> selection for adding these devices. An encoder that you add with the <Auto Detect> selection, must be available in the network. The device capabilities of the encoder are retrieved and default stream qualities are applied.

Notice:

You cannot add a device with the <Auto Detect> selection to an NVR.

Related Topics

- Adding devices, page 81
- Updating the device capabilities, page 69
- Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box, page 155
- Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box, page 156

Supported hardware



Caution!

Do not connect a device to more than one Bosch VMS! This can lead to recording gaps and other undesired effects.

You can connect the following hardware to Bosch VMS:

- Mobile video clients like iPhone or iPad via DynDNS
- Various IP cameras. encoders and ONVIF cameras (live only or via Video Streaming Gateway)
 - Connected via network
- Live only encoders with local storage
 - Connected via network
- iSCSI storage devices
 - Connected via network
- VIDOS NVR computer
 - Connected via network
- Analog cameras
 - Connected to encoders, BRS / DiBos devices
- Decoders
 - Connected via network
- Analog monitors
 - Connected to a decoder, to a Bosch Allegiant matrix, to a Bosch VMS Client workstation
- BRS / DiBos devices (see the data sheet for Bosch VMS for supported software versions)
 Connected via network
- Bosch Allegiant matrix (Firmware version: 8.75 or greater, MCS version: 2.80 or greater)
 Connected to a COM port of the Management Server or to a remote computer and to an IP encoder on the network.
- VideoTec DCZ keyboard
 - Connected to a USB port of a Bosch VMS workstation.
- Bosch IntuiKey keyboard
 - Connected to the COM port of a Bosch VMS workstation (Firmware version: 1.82 or greater) or to a hardware decoder (VIP XD).
 - If you connect the keyboard to a workstation, the user can control the complete system with the keyboard. If you connect the keyboard to a VIP XD decoder, the user can only control analog monitors with the keyboard.
- SMS device
 - Connected to a COM port of the Management Server
- SMTP E-mail server
 - Connected via network
- POS
 - Connected via network
- ATM
 - Connected via network
- Network monitoring device
 - Connected via network
- I/O modules
 - Connected via network
 - Only ADAM devices are supported.

All devices connected via network are connected to a switch. The computers of the Bosch VMS are also connected to this device

5.1 Installing hardware

Bosch VMS supports the following hardware components:

- VideoTec DCZ keyboard
- Bosch IntuiKey keyboard
- Bosch Allegiant matrix with cameras and monitor: Connected to a COM port of one of the computers of the network and to IP encoders connected to the network
- Encoders with analog cameras
- Local storage encoders
- IP cameras and IP AutoDomes
- Monitors connected to a decoder (analog monitor groups for alarm processing are possible)
- DiBos Systems with cameras
- DVR Systems with cameras
- ATM / POS devices
- I/O modules
 Only ADAM devices are supported.

5.2 Connecting a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard to Bosch VMS

This chapter provides background information on configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard.

5.2.1 Scenarios for Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connections

You can connect a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard to the COM port of a Bosch VMS workstation (scenario 1) or to a hardware decoder (e.g. VIP XD, scenario 2).

If you connect the keyboard to a Bosch VMS workstation, you can control the complete system. If you connect the keyboard to a decoder, you can only control the analog monitors of the system.

If you connect the keyboard to an Enterprise Operator Client, you can control the cameras of a specific Management Server by first pressing the server key to type in the number of this server and then type the camera number.

Notice!



For connecting the Bosch IntuiKey keyboard with a Bosch VMS workstation, use the specified Bosch cable.

For connecting the Bosch IntuiKey keyboard with a VIP XD decoder, you need a cable which connects a serial COM port of the keyboard with the serial interface of the decoder. See Connecting a CCTV keyboard to a decoder for connections.

Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a Bosch VMS workstation

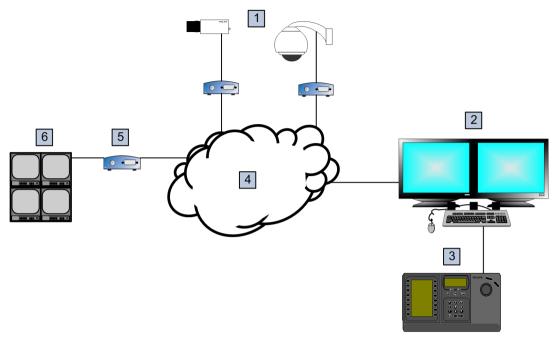


Figure 5.1: Scenario 1: Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a Bosch Video Management System workstation

1	Various cameras connected to network via encoders
2	Bosch VMS workstation
3	Bosch IntuiKey keyboard
4	Bosch VMS network
5	Decoder
6	Analog monitors

Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a decoder

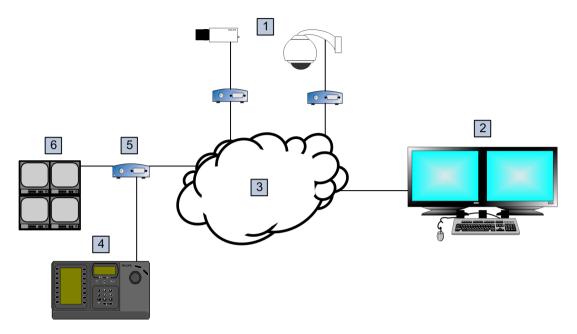


Figure 5.2: Scenario 2: Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a decoder

1	Various cameras connected to network via encoders
2	Bosch VMS workstation
3	Bosch VMS network
4	Bosch IntuiKey keyboard
5	Decoder
6	Analog monitors

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available windows:

- Assign Keyboard page, page 166

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available step-by-step instructions:

- Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (workstation), page 89
- Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (decoder), page 89
- Configuring a decoder for use with a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, page 85

5.2.2 Connecting a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard to a decoder

Configuring the decoder

See Configuring a decoder for use with a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, page 85 for details.

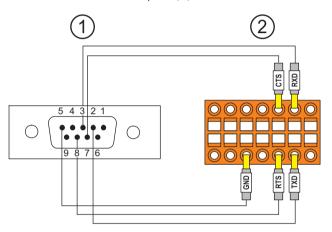
Connections between COM port and VIP XD decoder

The following table lists the connections between an RS232 adapter and a serial interface of a VIP XD decoder:

RS232 adapter	Serial interface of a VIP XD decoder
1	
2	TX
3	RX

RS232 adapter	Serial interface of a VIP XD decoder
4	
5	GND
6	
7	CTS
8	RTS
9	

The following illustration shows the pinout of a standard RS232 adapter (1) and the pinout of the decoder's serial adapter (2):



5.2.3 Updating Bosch IntuiKey keyboard firmware

- 1. On any PC, install the IntuiKey downloader.
- 2. Start IntuiKey Firmware Upgrade Utility.
- 3. Connect the keyboard with a valid serial cable (refer to Bosch Support if such a cable is not available) to this PC.
- 4. On the keyboard, press Keyboard Control softkey, then Firmware Upgrade.
- 5. Enter the password: 0 and 1 simultaneously.
 - The keyboard is in bootloader mode.
- 6. On the PC, click Browse to select the firmware file: for example kbd.s20
- 7. Set the COM port.
- 8. Click the Download button to download the firmware.
 - On the keyboard display, Programming is displayed.
 - Do not press the Clr key now. Otherwise the keyboard is not usable after restart (see Notice below).
- 9. Click Browse to select the language: for example 8900_EN_..82.s20 On the keyboard display, Programming is displayed.
- 10. Close IntuiKey Firmware Upgrade Utility.
- 11. On the keyboard, press Clr key to exit.
 - The keyboard restarts. Wait some seconds until the menu for selecting the keyboard language appears.
- 12. Select the desired language with a softkey.
 - The default start display appears.



Notice!

For starting the bootloader mode directly, you can unplug the power supply from the keyboard, press 0 and 1 simultaneously, plug In the power supply again, release 0 and 1.

5.3 Connecting Bosch Allegiant Matrix to Bosch Video Management System

The Bosch VMSAllegiant Matrix interface provides seamless access to analog matrix cameras in the Operator Client interface. Allegiant cameras appear almost identical to IP cameras. The only difference is a small grid symbol on the camera to indicate that it is a Allegiant camera. You can display cameras using the same tasks as for IP cameras. They are included both in the Logical Tree and the site maps, and users can add them to their Favorites Trees. In-videowindow control for Allegiant-connected PTZ cameras is supported, and you can easily display Allegiant cameras on analog monitors connected to IP decoders.

Bosch VMS provides an interface to the matrix switch via the Allegiant MCS (Master Control Software) application). The MCS, in this case, runs invisibly in the background. This software provides an efficient, event-driven interface to the Allegiant. It provides fast, real-time event response from the Allegiant to Bosch VMS. So, for example, if a defective coax cable results in video loss in the Allegiant, an immediate notification is sent to Bosch VMS. Also, you can program Bosch VMS to respond to Allegiant alarms.

5.3.1 Bosch Allegiant Connection Overview

To achieve a connection between Bosch VMS and an Allegiant matrix switching system, you configure a control channel between the Bosch VMS and the Allegiant matrix.

Two scenarios are possible:

- Local connection
 The Management Server controls the Allegiant matrix.
- Remote connection
 A dedicated Bosch Allegiant PC connected to the network controls the Allegiant matrix.

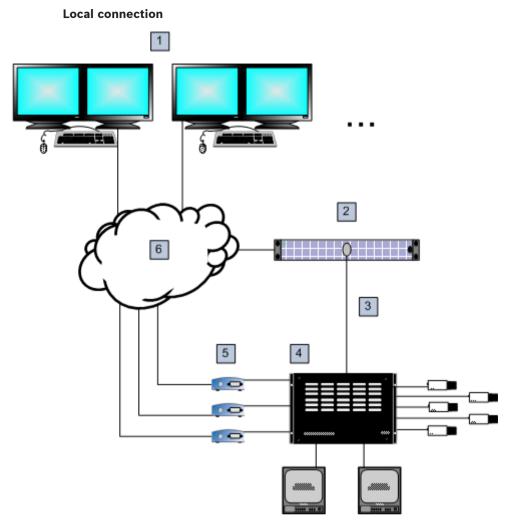


Figure 5.3: Bosch Video Management System local connection to a Bosch Allegiant matrix switch

1	Bosch VMS Client workstations	
2	Management Server with Master Control Software	
3	RS-232 connection	
4	Allegiant matrix	
5	encoders	
6	Network	

Remote connection

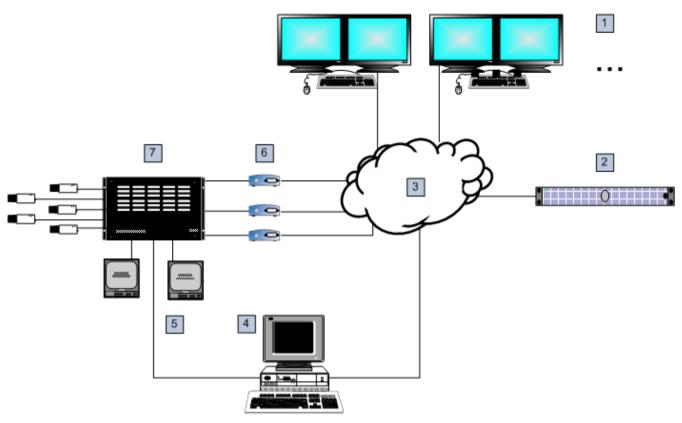


Figure 5.4: Bosch Video Management System remote connection to a Bosch Allegiant matrix switch

1	Bosch VMS Client workstations	
2	Management Server with Master Control Software	
3	Network	
4	Allegiant PC with Master Control Software	
5	RS-232 connection	
6	encoders	
7	Allegiant matrix	

5.3.2 Configuring the control channel

Perform the following tasks to configure the control channel:

- Wiring
- Installing the software
- Creating Allegiant configuration file
- Adding the Allegiant matrix to Bosch VMS
- Configuring user names

Wiring

To configure the control channel between Bosch VMS and the Allegiant matrix, connect one PC through an RS-232 serial port to the Allegiant's console port (use the specified Bosch cable for connection). This can be the Bosch VMS Management Server, or any other PC on the network.

Installing Allegiant Master Control Software

- Stop the Management Server service if running (Start > Control Panel > Services > Rightclick Bosch VMS Management Server > Stop)
- 2. Install the Allegiant Master Control Software on the Management Server and on the Allegiant PC (if present).
- 3. On an remote Allegiant PC configure it to start the Allegiant Network Host program (Id_alghw.exe) on startup. This starts the necessary Allegiant services to allow other PCs on the network to access the Allegiant. The software runs invisibly. It is not necessary to have a dongle attached to this computer.
 - To have the service started on computer startup automatically, copy a link to ld alghw.exe to the Startup folder of your computer.

Creating a Bosch Allegiant configuration file

- Using the Allegiant Master Control Software, create a Allegiant configuration file that specifies the computer attached to the Allegiant matrix. For this task, the Master Control dongle is required.
- 2. On the Transfer menu, click Communication Setup. In the Current Host list, enter the DNS name of the computer connected to the Allegiant matrix, and enter the serial port parameters (COM port number, baud rate, etc.) of the Allegiant-connected serial port. This allows the Master Control Software on the Management Server or PC to go on-line with the Allegiant system. If this is not successful, ensure that either the Master Control Software or the Allegiant Network Host program is running on the computer attached to the Allegiant matrix, and that the network security is configured to allow remote access to this computer.
- 3. On the Transfer menu, click Upload. Select all tables and click Upload. To save the configuration file, select a directory.
- 4. Exit the Master Control Software.

Adding the Bosch Allegiant matrix to Bosch VMS

- Start the Bosch VMS Management Server service, start the Configuration Client, and add the Allegiant device by adding this configuration file (see Adding devices, page 81 for the step-by-step instruction).
- Ensure that the Allegiant Master Control Software configuration file used in Bosch VMS matches the current Allegiant configuration.
 - Bosch VMS runs the required components of Master Control Software invisibly in the background.

Configuring the user name for logging on the Allegiant services

If the Allegiant matrix is connected to a PC in the network and not to the Management Server, ensure that the Allegiant services on this PC and on the Management Server log on with the same user account. This user must be member of an administrators group.

Further notes in the documentation

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available windows:

Matrix Switches page, page 152

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available step-by-step instructions:

- Configuring a Bosch Allegiant device, page 86

5.3.3 Bosch Allegiant Satellite System Concept

The Allegiant matrix switch allows multiple Allegiant systems to be tied together using the Satellite concept. In this case, multiple Allegiant systems can appear to the Bosch VMS as one large system, providing access to all cameras on all systems.

In an Allegiant Satellite System, monitor outputs of a slave Allegiant are tied to video inputs on the master Allegiant. This connection is called a trunk line. In addition, a control channel is established between the master and the slave. When a camera from a slave Allegiant is requested from the master Allegiant, a command is sent to the slave instructing it to switch the requested camera to a trunk line. At the same time, the master Allegiant switches the trunk input to the requested master Allegiant monitor output. This completes the video connection from the requested slave camera to the desired master monitor.

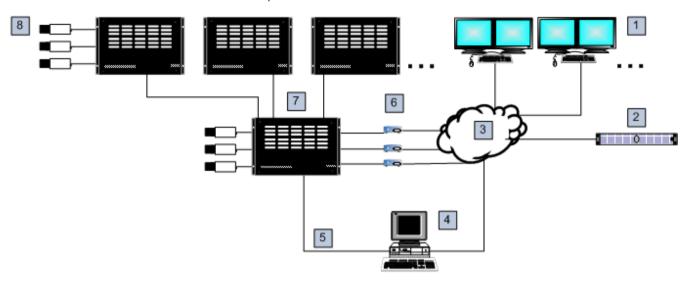


Figure 5.5: Bosch Allegiant system extended with Satellite switches

1	Bosch VMS Client workstations	
2	Management Server with Master Control Software	
3	Network	
4	Allegiant PC with Master Control Software	
5	RS-232 connection	
6	encoders	
7	Allegiant matrix	
8	Allegiant Satellite matrix	

You can apply the Satellite concept such that an Allegiant can be both a master and a slave. In this way, each Allegiant can view cameras from the others. It is only necessary to connect trunk lines and control lines in both directions, and to properly configure the Allegiant tables. The concept can be further extended, with no practical limit, to multiple Allegiant systems. An Allegiant can have many slaves, and it can be a slave to many masters. You can program the Allegiant tables to allow or disallow user access to camera views as required by site policies.

5.3.4 Allegiant CCL commands supported in Bosch VMS

To use the CCL commands you need the CCL User Guide. This manual is available in the Online Product Catalog in the document section of each LTC Allegiant Matrix.

Supported command	Description	Remarks
Switching/Sequence		
LCM	Switch Logical Camera to Monitor	LCM, LCM+ and LCM- are equivalent.
LCMP	Switch Logical Camera to Monitor with Pre-position Call	
MON+CAM	Switch Physical Camera to Monitor	
MON-RUN	Run Sequence by Monitor Number	
MON-HOLD	Hold Sequence by Monitor Number	
SEQ-REQ	Sequence Request	
SEQ-ULD	Sequence Unload	
Receiver/Driver		
R/D	Basic Control commands	
REMOTE-ACTION	Simultaneous Pan/Tilt/ Zoom Control commands	
REMOTE-TGL	Toggle Pan/Tilt/Zoom Control commands	
PREPOS-SET	Set Pre-position	
PREPOS	Call Pre-position	
AUX-ON AUX-OFF	Auxiliary Control commands - Auxiliary On - Auxiliary Off	
VARSPEED_PTZ	Variable Speed Control commands	
Alarm		Used to control virtual inputs. For example "+alarm 1" closes virtual input 1, "-alarm 1" opens virtual input 1
+ALARM	Activate an alarm	Opens a virtual input in Bosch VMS.
-ALARM	Deactivate an alarm	Closes a virtual input in Bosch VMS.
System		

Supported command	Description	Remarks
Switching/Sequence		
TC8x00>HEX	Set Hexadecimal Mode	
TC8x00>DECIMAL	Set Decimal Mode	

44

6 Getting started

This chapter provides information on how to get started with Bosch VMS and with Bosch VMS Archive Player

6.1 Installing the software modules

Caution!

Do not install DiBos Web client on any Bosch VMS computer.

Install every software module on the computer that is supposed to be used for this module.

To install:

- 1. Insert the product CD-ROM.
- 2. Start setup.exe or start the Bosch VMS Setup on the Welcome screen.
- 3. In the next dialog box, select the modules to be installed on this computer.
- 4. Follow the instructions on the screen.

6.2 Using Configuration Wizard

To start Configuration Wizard:

Click Start > All Programs > Bosch VMS > Configuration Wizard.
The Welcome page is displayed.

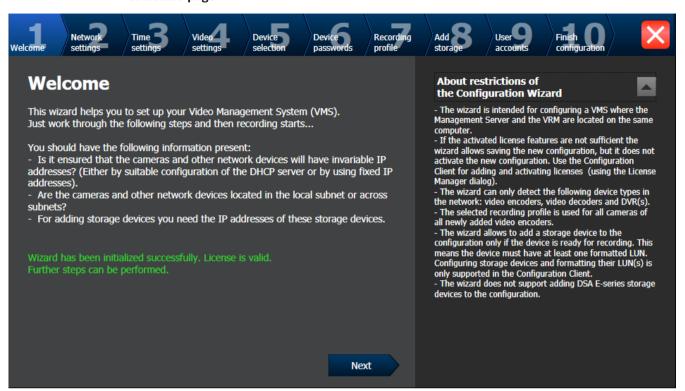
Related Topics

- Configuration Wizard, page 20

Available pages

- Welcome page, page 45
- , page 46
- , page 47
- Latest saved configuration page, page 48
- Select video devices to be added page, page 49
- Enter password for added devices page, page 50
- Select a recording profile page, page 51
- Add storage page, page 52
- User accounts and passwords page, page 53
- Activate Configuration page, page 54

Welcome page

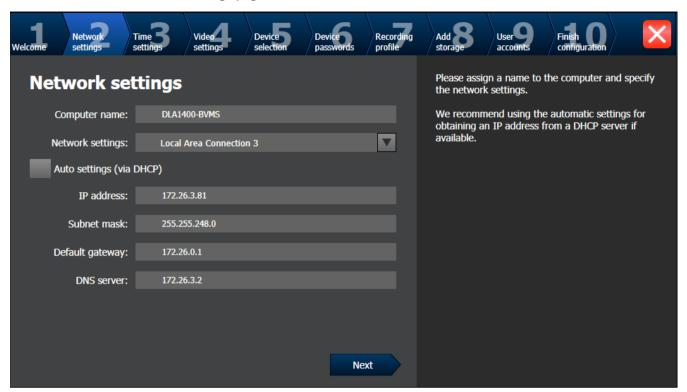


If the connection to the Management Server cannot be established, a corresponding error message is displayed. You cannot continue working with Configuration Wizard.

If VRM is not available on the computer, a corresponding error message is displayed. You cannot continue working with Configuration Wizard.

If the license check fails, a corresponding error message is displayed. You cannot continue working with Configuration Wizard.

Network settings page



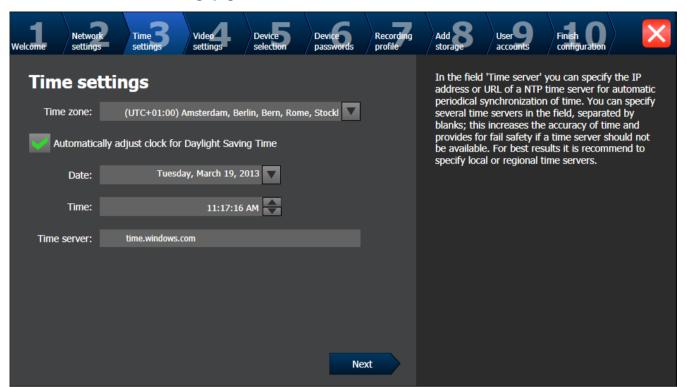


Notice!

Only available on DIVAR IP 3000 and DIVAR IP 7000.

You configure the network settings of the operating system. As soon as you click **Next** button, the settings are activated.

Time settings page



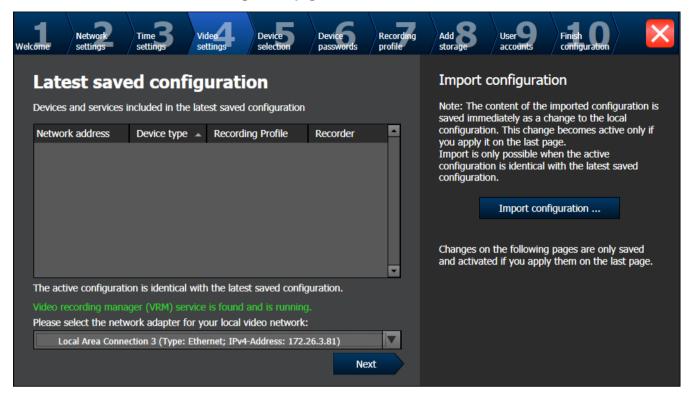


Notice!

Only available on DIVAR IP 3000 and DIVAR IP 7000.

You configure the time settings of the operating system.

Latest saved configuration page

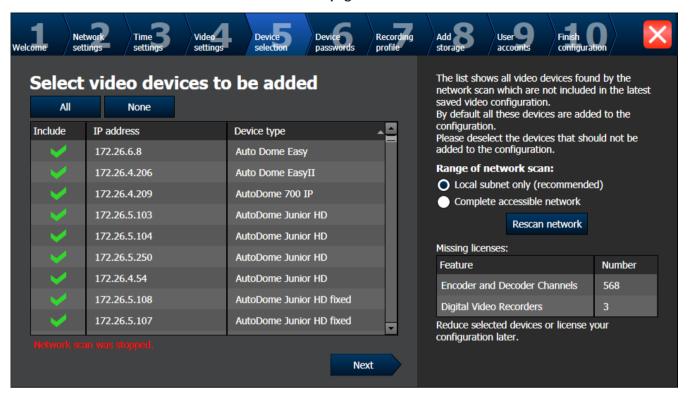


This page displays the latest saved configuration. You can import a BVMS file as a change to the existing configuration. This change is saved but not activated when you click **Next**. You can select the network adapter of your computer that is connected to the video devices (IP cameras, encoders, decoders, iSCSI storage systems) of your system. The IP address of this network adapter is used as IP address of the VRM, the VSG and the local iSCSI storage system.

49

Select video devices to be added page

Clicking Next starts scanning for devices.

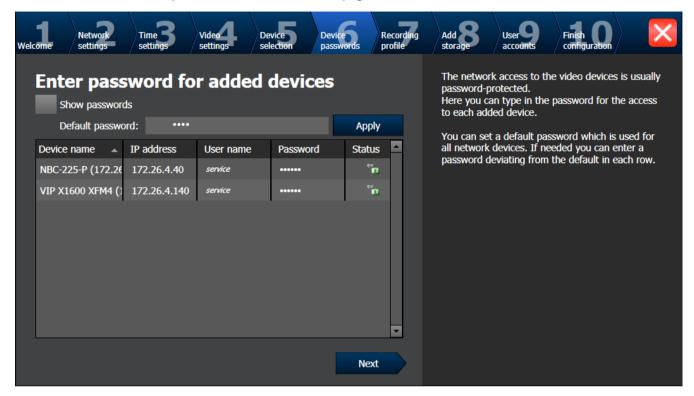


This page displays all network devices that are already added to the system.

If you import a configuration, the time and network settings are not affected.

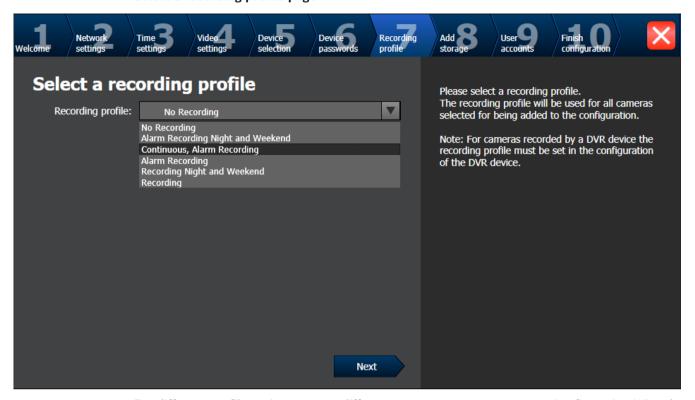
For multi-channel encoders, the recording profile is displayed as **(non-uniform)**, if applicable.

Enter password for added devices page



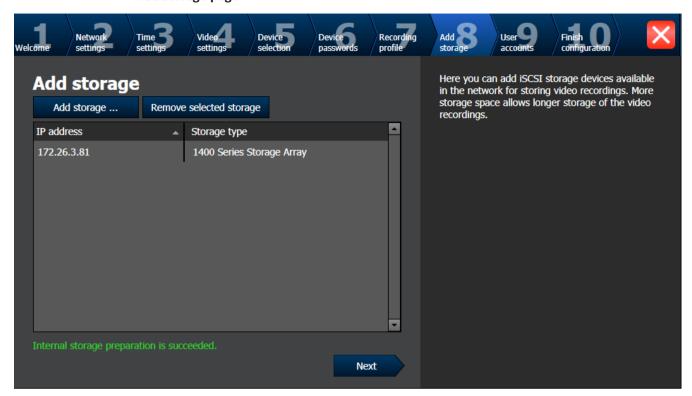
Password check is performed automatically, when you do not enter a character in a password field for a few seconds or you click outside the password field.

Select a recording profile page



For different profile assignments to different cameras you must execute Configuration Wizard multiple times.

Add storage page

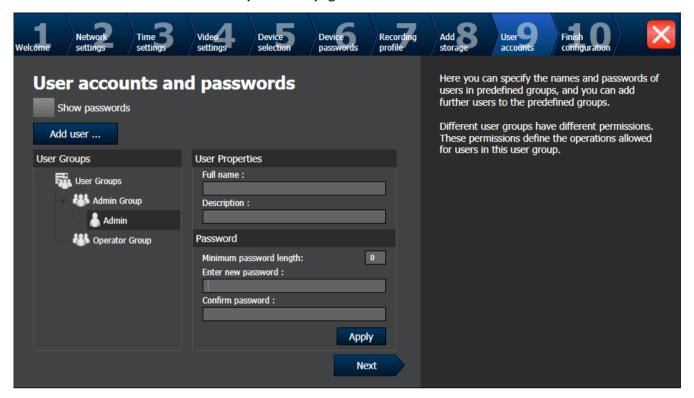


If no iSCSI system is available on your system, you can add it manually in Configuration Wizard.

If VRM is not already being added to the configuration, Configuration Wizard adds it automatically using the IP address of your system.

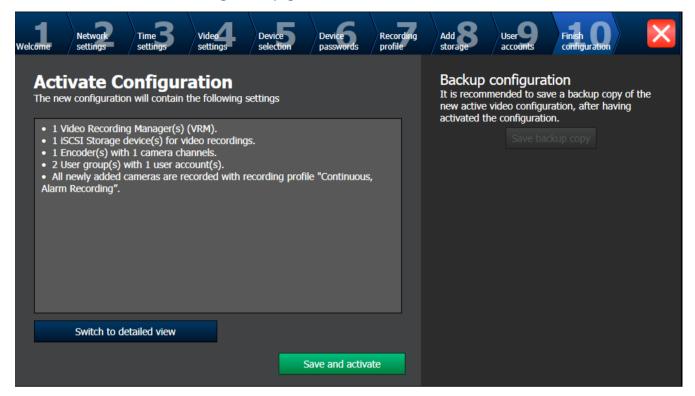
53

User accounts and passwords page



You can add users, you cannot add user groups.

Activate Configuration page



After clicking **Save and activate**, the configuration is activated.

After successful activation the **Activate Configuration** page is displayed again. Now you can store a backup of the configuration if desired: Click **Save backup copy**.

6.3 Accessing the system

You access a system performing the following steps:

- 1. Perform one of the following steps to select the network address of the desired system:
 - Click a preselected list entry.
 - Enter a network address manually.
 - Select a network address using Server Lookup.
- 2. Log on to the desired system:
 - Single server system
 - Enterprise System

6.4 Using Server Lookup

A single user of Configuration Client or Operator Client may want to connect to multiple system access points sequentially. This access is called Server Lookup. System access points can be Management Server or Enterprise Management Server.

Server Lookup supports you in locating system access points by their names or descriptions. The user retrieves the list of system access points during logon. He needs to connect to the server hosting the configuration with **Server List (Server List Provider**).

To access:

- Start Operator Client or Configuration Client.
 The logon dialog box is displayed.
- 2. In the Connection: list, select **<Browse...>**.
 - If private and public IP address has been configured for a server, this is indicated. If you select **<Browse...>** for the first time, the **Server List Provider** dialog box is
 - displayed.
- 3. In the **(Enterprise) Management Server Address:** field, type in a valid network address of the desired server.
- 4. Enter a valid user name and password.
- 5. If required, click **Remember Settings**.
- 6. Click **OK**.
 - The **Server Lookup** dialog box is displayed.
- 7. Select the desired server.
- 8. Click OK.
- If the selected server has both a private and a public network address, a message box is displayed asking whether you are using a computer located in the private network of the selected server.
 - The server name is added to the Connection: list in the logon dialog box.
- 10. Select this server in the Connection: list and click OK.
 If you have selected the Remember Settings check box, you can select this server directly when you again want to access this server.

6.5 Configuring remote access

You can configure remote access either for a single system without Enterprise System or for an Enterprise System.

6.5.1 Configuring without Enterprise System

To configure:

- 1. Configure remote access settings in the Remote Access Settings dialog box.
- 2. Configure the router.

Related Topics

Remote Access Settings dialog box, page 140

6.5.2 Configuring with Enterprise System

To configure:

- 1. Configure the Server List.
- 2. Configure Enterprise User Groups and Enterprise Accounts.
- 3. Configure remote access settings in the Remote Access Settings dialog box.
- 4. Configure the router.

Related Topics

- Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System, page 59
- Creating a group or account, page 118
- Remote Access Settings dialog box, page 140

6.6 Activating the software licenses

Main window

When you install Bosch VMS for the first time, you must activate the licenses for the software packages that you have ordered, including the base package and any expansions and/or optional features.

To obtain the Activation Key for a license, you need the Authorization Number. This number is included in your product box.

With a Bundle Information file you can ease the process of activating.

Caution!

The computer signature is used for licensing. This computer signature can change after exchanging hardware on the Management Server computer. When the computer signature is changed, the license for the base package becomes invalid.

To avoid licensing problems, finish the hardware and software configuration before you generate the computer signature.

The following hardware changes can make the base license invalid:

Exchanging the network interface card.

Adding a VMWare or VPN virtual network interface.

Adding or activating a WLAN network interface.

Switchover of a Stratus server mainboard without teaming settings.

To activate the software:

- 1. Start Configuration Client.
- 2. On the Tools menu, click License Manager....

The **License Manager** dialog box is displayed.

3. Click to check the boxes for the software package, the features, and the expansions that you want to activate. For the expansions, enter the number of licenses.

If you have received a Bundle Information file, click **Import Bundle Info** to import it.

4. Click Activate.

The **License Activation** dialog box is displayed.

- 5. Write down the computer signature or copy and paste it into a text file.
- 6. On a computer with Internet access, enter the following URL into your browser: https://activation.boschsecurity.com

If you do not have an account to access the Bosch License Activation Center, either create a new account (recommended) or click the link to activate a new license without

logging on. If you create an account and log on before activating, the License Manager keeps track of your activations. You can then review this at any time.

Follow the instructions to obtain the License Activation Key.

7. Return to the Bosch VMS software. In the **License Activation** dialog box, type the License Activation Key obtained from the License Manager and click **Activate**. The software package is activated.

6.7 Starting Configuration Client

Only the user called Admin can log on to Configuration Client.

Note:

You cannot start Configuration Client when another user on another computer in the system has already started Configuration Client.

To start Configuration Client:

- From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** > Bosch VMS > Config Client.
 The dialog box for logging on is displayed.
- In the User Name: field, type your user name.
 When you start the application for the first time, enter Admin as user name, no password required.
- 3. In the Password: field, type your password.
- Click **OK**.
 The application starts.

6.8 Configuring the language of Configuration Client

You configure the language of your Configuration Client independently of the language of your Windows installation.

To configure the language:

- 1. On the **Settings** menu, click **Options...**.
 - The **Options** dialog box is displayed.
- In the Language list, select the desired language.
 If you select Default system language, the language of your Windows installation is used.
- 3. Click OK.

The language is switched after the next restart of the application.

6.9 Configuring the language of Operator Client

You configure the language of your Operator Client independently of the language of your Windows installation and of your Configuration Client. This step is performed in the Configuration Client.

To configure the language:

- 1. Click **User Groups** > . Click the **User Group Properties** tab.
- 2. In the Language: list, select the desired language.
- 3. Click to save the settings.
- 4. Click to activate the configuration.
 Restart Operator Client.

6.10 Adding a new license

Main window

Have the Activation Letter at hand that you received from Bosch.

To add a new license:

- 1. On the Tools menu, click License Manager....
 - The License Manager dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Select the software package that you want to activate.
- 3. Click Activate.
 - The License Activation dialog box is displayed.
- 4. Type the License Activation Key that you find in the Activation Letter.
- 5. Click Activate.
 - The software package is activated.
- 6. Repeat this procedure for each software package that you want to activate.

Related Topics

- License Manager dialog box, page 138
- License Activation dialog box, page 138

6.11 Working offline

When Operator Client is disconnected from a Management Server, a respective overlay icon is displayed in the Logical Tree on the disconnected Management Server. You can continue working with Operator Client even if the disconnection lasts longer, but some functions are not available.

If the connection to the Management Server is reestablished, a respective overlay icon is displayed.

If a new configuration on a Management Server has been activated, a respective icon is displayed in the Logical Tree on the icon of the affected Management Server and a dialog box is displayed for some seconds. Accept or refuse the new configuration.

If your Operator Client instance is scheduled to log off at a specific point in time, this logoff occurs even when the connection to the Management Server is not reestablished at this point in time.

When disconnected from a Management Server, all devices are indicated with the ? icon. The state overlay of a device in the Logical Tree or on a map when Operator Client is disconnected from the Management Server

The following functions are not available in Operator Client when disconnected from the Management Server for this connection:

- Handling alarms, Alarm List
- Indication of recording
- Indication of state changes
- PTZ control locking
- Analog monitor group
- Scripts

7 Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System



Main window >

Devices > Enterprise System > Server List

You configure multiple Management Server computers in the Server List of an appropriate Management Server.

For simultaneous access you must configure one or more Enterprise User Groups. This changes this Management Server to an Enterprise Management Server.

A user of Operator Client can log on with a user name of an Enterprise User Group to get simultaneous access to the Management Server computers configured in the Server List.



Operating permissions are configured on the Enterprise Management Server in **Groups**, Enterprise User Group tab.



Device permissions are configured on each Management Server in Enterprise Access tab.

User Groups,









3. Click

to activate the configuration.

To add servers:

Click Add Server.

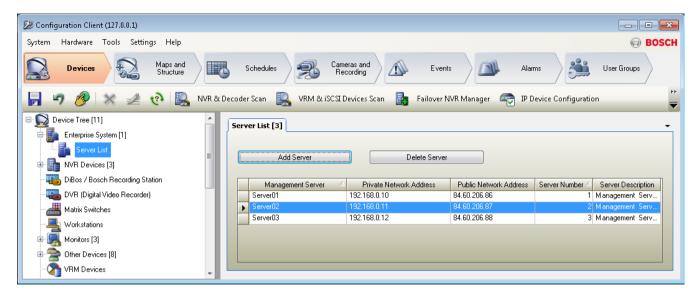
The Add Server dialog box is displayed.

- 2. Type in a display name for the server and the network address (DNS name or IP address).
- If required, type in a public network address (DNS name or IP address) for remote access.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Repeat these steps until you have added all desired Management Server computers.

The Management Server computers for your Enterprise System are configured.

Now configure the desired Enterprise User Groups and the Enterprise Access.

The following screenshot shows an example:



Related Topics

- Enterprise System, page 20
- Server List page, page 143
- User Groups page, page 229
- Using Server Lookup, page 55

8 Configuring Server Lookup



Main window > Devices > Enterprise System > Server List

For Server Lookup, the user of Operator Client or Configuration Client logs on with a user name of a normal user group, not as a user of an Enterprise User Group.

1. Click to save the settings.

2. Click to undo the last setting.

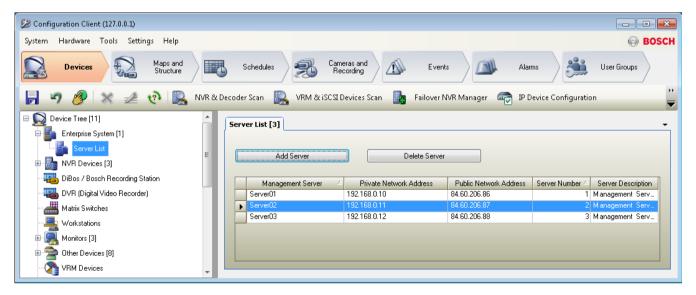
3. Click to activate the configuration.

To add servers:

- 1. Click Add Server.
 - The **Add Server** dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Type in a display name for the server and the network address (DNS name or IP address).
- If required, type in a public network address (DNS name or IP address) for remote access.
- 4. Click **OK**.
- 5. Repeat these steps until you have added all desired Management Server computers.

The Management Server computers for Server Lookup are configured.

The following screenshot shows an example:



Related Topics

- Server Lookup, page 24
- Server List page, page 143
- Using Server Lookup, page 55

Managing VRM storage 9



Main window > 🍱

This chapter provides information on how to configure the devices in your system. Changing the Device Tree impacts other pages of the Configuration Client:

Maps and Structure

With the devices of the Device Tree you create a user defined structure called Logical Tree. Hence, if you remove a device from the Device Tree, this device is automatically removed from the Logical Tree. But adding a device to the Device Tree does not add this device to the Logical Tree.

Cameras and Recording

All cameras of the Device Tree are available in the Camera Table and the Recording Tables. You cannot modify DiBos or Bosch Allegiant cameras.

Events

All devices of the Device Tree are available in the corresponding Event Tables.

You can reduce the functional range of the devices on several permission pages (per user group or Enterprise Account).



to save the settings.



to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

9.1 Adding a VRM device with iSCSI device



Devices >



In your network, you need a VRM service running on a computer, and an iSCSI device.

Caution!

When you add an iSCSI device with no targets and LUNs configured, start a default configuration and add the IQN of each encoder to this iSCSI device.

When you add an iSCSI device with targets and LUNs pre-configured, add the IQN of each encoder to this iSCSI device.

See Configuring an iSCSI device, page 64 for details.

The system supports you with a scan for devices.

9.1.1 Adding an iSCSI device



Notice!

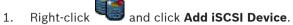


When you add an iSCSI device with no targets and LUNs configured, start a default configuration and add the IQN of each encoder to this iSCSI device.

When you add an iSCSI device with targets and LUNs pre-configured, add the IQN of each encoder to this iSCSI device.

See Configuring an iSCSI device, page 64 for details.

To add:



The Add iSCSI Device dialog box is displayed.

2. Type in the desired display name, the network address of the iSCSI device, and select the device type. Type in the password.

Click OK.

The iSCSI device is added to the VRM. Video streams from an IP device assigned to this VRM are recorded on the added iSCSI device.

Related Topics

- Pool page, page 170
- Configuring an iSCSI device, page 64

9.1.2 Adding a DSA E-Series iSCSI device







Add DSA F-

Series Device > Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box

To add:

- 1. Type in a displayname, the management IP address and the password.
- 2. Click Connect.

If connection is established, the fields in the **Controller** group and the **2nd Controller** group are filled.

3. Click OK.

The device is added to the system.

Related Topics

- Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box, page 174

9.2 Adding a VRM pool



To add a VRM pool:

Right-click and click Add Pool.
A new pool is added to the system.

9.3 Configuring automatic recording mode on a pool



Notice:

If you have configured a failover recording mode earlier, this configuration is overwritten.

To configure:

In the Recording preferences mode list, select Automatic.

After activation of the configuration the Automatic recording mode is active. On the Recording Preferences page of an encoder, the primary and the secondary target list are disabled.

Related Topics

Configuring failover recording mode on an encoder, page 70

9.4 Configuring an iSCSI device

After adding VRM devices, iSCSI devices, and encoders, perform the following tasks to ensure that video data of encoders is stored on the iSCSI devices or video data can be retrieved from these iSCSI devices:

- Execute the default configuration to create LUNs on each target of the iSCSI device.
 This step is optional. You do not need to perform this step on an iSCSI device with LUNs pre-configured.
- Scan the iSCSI device to add the targets and LUNs to the Device Tree after default configuration.

Note:

Not all iSCSI devices support the default configuration and automatic IQN mapping.

To perform the default configuration of an iSCSI device:

1. Expand the appropriate VRM device and , click the appropriate iSCSI device



2. Click the **Basic Configuration** tab.

LUNs are created on the targets of the iSCSI device.

3. Format these LUNs.

See Formatting a LUN, page 66.

4. When the process has finished, click to save the settings.



5. Click to activate the configuration.

To scan the iSCSI device:

1. Expand the appropriate VRM device and , click the appropriate iSCSI device



Right-click and click Scan ISCSI Device.

The process is started.

Targets and LUNs are detected and added to the Device Tree below the iSCSI node.

3. Click to save the settings.



to activate the configuration.

To perform IQN mapping:

Expand the appropriate VRM device





. click the appropriate iSCSI device



Right-click and click Map IQNs.

The ign-Mapper dialog box is displayed and the process is started.

The encoders that are assigned to the selected VRM device are evaluated and their IQNs are added to this iSCSI device.

to save the settings.



to activate the configuration.

9.5 Moving an iSCSI system to another pool

Main window > **Devices** > Expand









You move a device from one pool to another within the same VRM without any recording loss.

To move:

Right-click and click Change Pool The Change Pool for is displayed.

- In the **New Pool:** list, select the desired pool.
- Click OK.

The device is moved to the selected pool.

Related Topics

Change Pool for dialog box, page 174

9.6 Adding a LUN









Usually the network scan adds the desired iSCSI devices with their targets and LUNs automatically. If your network scan did not work correctly or you want to configure your iSCSI device offline before it is actually integrated into your network, you configure a target in your iSCSI device and on this target you configure one or more LUNs.

To configure:

Right-click and click Add Target. The **Add Target** dialog box is displayed.

Enter the desired target number and click Ok.



3. Click the new target.

The **LUNs** page is displayed.

4. Click Add.

The **Add LUN** dialog box is displayed.

5. Enter the desired LUN number and click Ok.

The LUN is added as a new table row.

Repeat this step for each desired LUN.

Notes:

- To remove a LUN, click **Remove**.
 The video data remains on this LUN.
- To format a LUN, click Format.
 All data on this LUN is removed!

9.7 Formatting a LUN



You format a LUN to prepare it for the first use.



Notice!

All data on the LUN is lost after formatting.

To configure:

- 1. On the **LUNs** page, select the desired LUN and, in the **Format** column, click to check.
- 2. Click Format LUN.
- 3. Read the displayed message carefully and confirm the message if desired. The selected LUN is formatted. All data on this LUN is lost.

10 Managing encoders



Main window > 🍱

Devices

This chapter provides information on how to configure the devices in your system. Changing the Device Tree impacts other pages of the Configuration Client:

- Maps and Structure

With the devices of the Device Tree you create a user defined structure called Logical Tree. Hence, if you remove a device from the Device Tree, this device is automatically removed from the Logical Tree. But adding a device to the Device Tree does not add this device to the Logical Tree.

Cameras and Recording

All cameras of the Device Tree are available in the Camera Table and the Recording Tables. You cannot modify DiBos or Bosch Allegiant cameras.

- Events

All devices of the Device Tree are available in the corresponding Event Tables.

User Groups

You can reduce the functional range of the devices on several permission pages (per user group or Enterprise Account).

- 1. Click to save the settings.
- 2. Click to undo the last setting.
- 3. Click to activate the configuration.

10.1 Adding an encoder to a VRM pool



The system supports you with a scan for devices.

To add an encoder:

- Right-click and click Scan Encoders.
 The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Select the required encoders, select the desired VRM pool and click **Assign** to assign them to the VRM pool.
- 3. Click Next >>.
- 4. Type all user names and passwords of the listed devices in the appropriate cells. Click **Test all** to authenticate all devices.
 - Click **Test selected** to authenticate only the selected devices. This is useful when you repeat the device scan and you want only the new ones to be authenticated.
- 5. Click Finish.

10.2 Moving an encoder to another pool

Main window > **Devices** > Expand





You move a device from one pool to another within the same VRM without any recording loss.

To move:

- Right-click and click Change Pool
 The Change Pool for is displayed.
- 2. In the **New Pool:** list, select the desired pool.
- 3. Click **OK**.

The device is moved to the selected pool.

Related Topics

- Change Pool for dialog box, page 174

10.3 Adding a live only encoder



Devices



Main window > 24

The system supports you with a scan for devices.

To add a Bosch live only device:

1. Right-click and click Scan live-only Encoders.

The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard is displayed.

2. Assign the device.

If required assign multiple devices.

Click Next >>.

The next step of the wizard is displayed.

4. Click **Finish**.

The device is connected to your Bosch VMS.

To add an ONVIF live only device:

1. Right-click and click Scan live-only ONVIF Encoders.

The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard is displayed.

2. Assign the device.

If required assign multiple devices.

Click Next >>.

The next step of the wizard is displayed.

4. Click Finish.

The device is connected to your Bosch Video Management System.

10.4 Adding a local storage encoder



The system supports you with a scan for devices.

To add a local storage:



and click Scan Local Storage Encoders.

The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard is displayed.

Assign the device.

If required assign multiple devices.

Click Next >>. 3.

The next step of the wizard is displayed.

4. Click Finish.

The device is connected to your Bosch Video Management System.

Related Topics

Local Storage page, page 182

Configuring an encoder / decoder 10.5

To configure an encoder:



To configure an encoder or a decoder:

Make the appropriate settings on the tab pages of the encoder or decoder.

See the Online Help for the appages for details.



Notice!

IP devices can be connected that do not have all configuration pages that are described here.

Updating the device capabilities 10.6





Edit Decoder dialog box

After an upgrade of the device, you can update its device capabilities. A message text informs you whether the retrieved device capabilities match the device capabilities stored in Bosch VMS.

To update:

Click V.

A message box is displayed with the following text:

If you apply the device capabilities, the recording settings and the event settings for this device may change. Check these settings for this device.

2. Click OK.

The device capabilities are updated.

Related Topics

- Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box, page 156

10.7 Configuring failover recording mode on an encoder



Prerequisites: On the **Pool** page, in the **Recording preferences mode** list, select **Failover**. If **Automatic** is selected, the settings are performed automatically and cannot be configured. If you want to use a secondary target for both automatic or failover mode: On the **Pool** page, in the **Secondary target usage** list, select **On**.

It is recommended to configure at least 2 iSCSI devices for failover mode.

To configure:

- Click Advanced Settings.
- 2. Click Recording Preferences.
- 3. Under **Primary target**, select the entry for the required target. All storage systems entered under **Storage Systems** will be shown in the list.

71

Under Secondary target, select the entry for the required target. All storage systems entered under Storage Systems are displayed in the list.

The changes are active immediately. An activation is not required.

Related Topics

Configuring automatic recording mode on a pool, page 63

10.8 **Configuring multiple encoders / decoders**

Main window

You can modify the following properties of multiple encoders and decoders at once:

- Display names
- IP addresses
- Firmware versions



Notice!

Changing the IP address of an IP device can make it unreachable.

To configure multiple IP addresses:

- On the Hardware menu, click IP Device Configuration.... The IP Device Configuration dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Select the required devices. You can select multiple devices by pressing the CTRL- or the SHIFT-kev.
- 3. Right-click the selected devices and click Set IP Addresses.... The Set IP Addresses dialog box is displayed.
- 4. In the **Start with:** field, type the first IP address.
- 5. Click Calculate. In the End with: field, the last IP address of the range for the selected devices is displayed.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. In the IP Device Configuration... dialog box, click Apply. The new IP addresses are updated in the selected devices.

To configure multiple display names:

- On the Hardware menu, click IP Device Configuration.... The IP Device Configuration dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Select the required devices. Multiple selection is possible by pressing the SHIFT key.
- Right-click the selected devices and click Set Display Names... The Set Display Names dialog box is displayed.
- 4. In the **Start with:** field, type the first string.
- Click Calculate. In the End with: field, the last string of the range for the selected devices is displayed.
- 6. Click OK.
- In the IP Device Configuration... dialog box, click Apply. The calculated names are updated in the selected devices.

To update firmware for multiple devices:

- 1. On the Hardware menu, click IP Device Configuration.... The IP Device Configuration dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Select the required devices.
- 3. Click Update Firmware.
- 4. Select the file containing the update.
- Click OK. 5.

Managing Video Streaming Gateway 11



Main window > 🍱

This chapter provides information on how to configure the devices in your system. Changing the Device Tree impacts other pages of the Configuration Client:

Maps and Structure

With the devices of the Device Tree you create a user defined structure called Logical Tree. Hence, if you remove a device from the Device Tree, this device is automatically removed from the Logical Tree. But adding a device to the Device Tree does not add this device to the Logical Tree.

Cameras and Recording

All cameras of the Device Tree are available in the Camera Table and the Recording Tables. You cannot modify DiBos or Bosch Allegiant cameras.

Events

All devices of the Device Tree are available in the corresponding Event Tables.

You can reduce the functional range of the devices on several permission pages (per user group or Enterprise Account).



to save the settings.



to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

11.1 Adding a Video Streaming Gateway device



Devices > Expand







Video Streaming Gateway > Add Video Streaming Gateway dialog box

You add a VSG to the system to enable assigning and configuring cameras to this VSG.

To add a VSG:

- Make the required settings for your VSG device.
- Click Add.
- The VSG device is added to the system. The cameras assigned to this VSG are recorded.

Video Streaming Gateway device page, page 178

11.2 Moving a VSG to another pool









You move a device from one pool to another within the same VRM without any recording loss.

To move:

- Right-click and click Change Pool
 The Change Pool for is displayed.
- 2. In the **New Pool:** list, select the desired pool.
- Click **OK**.
 The device is moved to the selected pool.

Related Topics

- Change Pool for dialog box, page 174

11.3 Adding a Bosch camera to a VSG



To add a camera:

1. Select the desired cameras and click to add them to the **VSG cameras** list. The **Add/Edit** dialog box is displayed.

Note: Select cameras of the same type, for example only Bosch cameras. Otherwise the



Dutton is disabled.

Type in user name and password and click **Connect**.
 If the connection to the encoder is established successfully, the configuration settings in the **Protocol settings** group are active.

If you do not want to wait until the connection is established, click **Skip**.

- 3. In the **Type** list, select Bosch RCP+.
- 4. In the Video input and Stream and Protocol lists make the required settings.
- 5. If required, type a name for the camera in the VSG Camera Name column.
- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. Click .

See also

- Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway), page 179
- Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway), page 178

11.4 Adding an ONVIF camera to a VSG



To add a camera:

1. Select the desired cameras and click to add them to the **VSG cameras** list. The **Add/Edit** dialog box is displayed.

Note: Select cameras of the same type, for example only Bosch cameras. Otherwise the



2. Type in user name and password and click **Connect**.

If the connection to the encoder is established successfully, the configuration settings in the **Protocol settings** group are active.

If you do not want to wait until the connection is established, click Skip.

- 3. In the **Type** list, select ONVIF.
- 4. In the **Stream** and **Token** lists make the required settings.
- 5. If required, type a name for the camera in the **VSG Camera Name** column.
- 6. Click OK.
- 7. Click 퇴

See also

- Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway), page 179

11.5 Configuring multicast for VSG



For each camera assigned to a Video Streaming Gateway device you can configure a multicast address with port.

To configure multicast:

- 1. Click to enable multicast.
- 2. Type in a valid multicast address and a port number.
- 3. If required, configure continuous multicast streaming.
- 4. Click .

See also

- Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway), page 180

11.6 Switching on VSG recording



To switch on:

- 1. Click the Recording Profiles tab.
- 2. Select the line of the camera, for which you want to switch on recording.
- 3. In the Recording list, select On.
- Click .
 Recording for this camera starts.

See also

- Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway), page 180

75

12 **Managing NVRs**



Main window > 🍱

This chapter provides information on how to configure the devices in your system. Changing the Device Tree impacts other pages of the Configuration Client:

Maps and Structure

With the devices of the Device Tree you create a user defined structure called Logical Tree. Hence, if you remove a device from the Device Tree, this device is automatically removed from the Logical Tree. But adding a device to the Device Tree does not add this device to the Logical Tree.

Cameras and Recording

All cameras of the Device Tree are available in the Camera Table and the Recording Tables. You cannot modify DiBos or Bosch Allegiant cameras.

Events

All devices of the Device Tree are available in the corresponding Event Tables.

You can reduce the functional range of the devices on several permission pages (per user group or Enterprise Account).



to save the settings.





to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

12.1 Adding NVRs, their recorded encoders, and decoders



You scan the network to detect the following devices:

NVRs

box

- Decoders
- **Encoders**

The system automatically adds a default analog monitor group with the detected decoders

assigned. This analog monitor group is added below



When you scan the network for the first time, NVRs and decoders are automatically assigned to the system.

You must manually assign detected encoders to NVRs.

To avoid conflicts with duplicate IP addresses you start the initial device scan. This is useful when you integrate new devices in your network which have duplicate IP addresses or the factory default IP address (192.168.0.1). You cannot perform this initial device scan successfully with devices that are password protected.

When you want to add devices that are not members of the same subnet, perform the initial device scan.

To start the initial device scan:

- On the Hardware menu, click Initial Device Scan....
 The Initial Device Scan dialog box is displayed.
- Click a cell to change the desired address. For changing multiple devices, select the
 desired rows. You can select multiple devices by pressing the CTRL- or the SHIFT-key.
 Then right-click the selected rows and click Set IP Addresses... or click Set Subnet
 Mask... to change the corresponding values.

You must enter the correct subnet mask before changing an IP address.

3. Click OK.

To scan the network:



1. Click

The **NVR & Decoder Scan** dialog box is displayed and all available NVRs, decoders, and encoders are detected.

The detected decoders are listed in the **Decoders** list and assigned automatically to the



tree item of the Device Tree. If no analog monitor group has already been created,

The detected NVRs are assigned automatically to the tree item of the Device Tree.

- 2. In the **Unassigned Encoders** list, select an encoder and drag it to an NVR in the **Assigned Encoders and NVRs** list. The encoder's cameras are recorded on the selected NVR.
- 3. Repeat the above step for every detected encoder that you want to be part of your system. Encoders that you do not drag to an NVR, are completely invisible in Bosch VMS.
- 4. Click Next >.
 - If required, a dialog box is displayed for changing the device names of the connected devices of the detected IP devices to be used for display. Bosch VMS names the devices with default names. If desired, you can use the existing names of the devices.
- 5. Make the required settings. For changing the displayed device names of a complete column at once, right-click a column with check boxes and click **Select Column**.
- 6. Click **Finish**.

12.2 Configuring NVRs



This chapter provides information on how to configure NVRs in your system.

Primary NVRs record the images of all assigned encoders and IP cameras connected to your system.

A Failover NVR is a server that takes over the tasks of a failing Primary NVR. The Failover NVR starts recording as soon as the Primary NVR fails. A Failover NVR cannot have any encoders directly assigned. A Failover NVR can take over the tasks of a Primary NVR even when Management Server is not available.

77

You can assign maximum one Failover NVR to a Primary NVR and you can assign multiple Primary NVRs to one Failover NVR.

When the Primary NVR works correctly again, the Primary NVR takes back his tasks from the Failover NVR automatically. The Failover NVR stops recording some seconds after the Primary NVR has started recording. The recordings of the down time stay on the Failover NVR. A Redundant NVR performs the same recording tasks as the assigned Primary NVR. A Primary NVR can have maximum one Redundant NVR assigned. On a Redundant NVR, you cannot configure the recording and event settings of the assigned devices independently from the Primary NVR. A Redundant NVR just retrieves video and audio streams and forwards them to a database. When you change the recording settings on the Primary NVR, these settings are synchronized on the Redundant NVR.

If you remove an NVR from the Device Tree, the recordings of this NVR are not deleted. You can retrieve them by activating a previous configuration version containing this NVR. You can assign a Failover NVR to a Redundant NVR. When the Redundant NVR fails, the Failover NVR takes over its tasks, i.e. it acts like a Redundant NVR.

The recordings are performed in different modes depending on your configuration:

- Continuous recording
- Pre-event recording
- Motion recording
- Alarm recording
- to save the settings.
- to undo the last setting.
- to activate the configuration.

12.2.1 **Configuring a Primary NVR**



You can perform the following tasks to configure a selected NVR:

- Configure video and audio storage
- Assign a Failover NVR
- Configure backup

To configure an NVR:

- Click the Global Settings tab to assign a Failover NVR to this NVR. The Switch over to: list contains only NVRs that have been configured as Failover NVRs.
- 2. Click the **Disk Storage** tab to configure the storage settings of the selected NVR.
- Click the Camera Storage tab to define minimum and maximum storage times, manage protected recordings, and to optionally schedule the backup of the assigned cameras. If scheduled backups are desired, you must first create a Task Schedule in Schedules.

12.2.2 Switching an NVR to a Failover NVR



To switch an NVR:

- 1. Right-click an NVR. This NVR must not have any encoders assigned.
- 2. Click Act as Failover NVR. The NVR is moved to the Failover NVRs node.

12.2.3 Switching an NVR to a Redundant NVR



To configure a Redundant NVR you must first change an NVR to a Redundant NVR.

To switch an NVR:

- 1. Right-click an NVR. This NVR must not have any encoders assigned.
- 2. Click Act as Redundant. The NVR is moved to the Redundant NVRs node.

12.2.4 Configuring a Failover NVR



Before you can configure a Failover NVR you must switch a Primary NVR to a Failover NVR. After having configured a Failover NVR, you assign it to one or multiple NVRs.

You can perform the following tasks to configure a selected Failover NVR:

- Configuring video and audio storage
- Assigning NVRs

To configure a Failover NVR:

- 1. Click the Global Settings tab to display network settings of the selected Failover NVR.
- 2. Click the **Disk Storage** tab to configure the storage settings of the selected Failover NVR.
- 3. Click the **Assigned NVRs** tab to add or remove NVRs to the selected Failover NVR. For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

12.2.5 Configuring a Redundant NVR



Before you can configure a Redundant NVR you must switch a Primary NVR to a Redundant NVR.

After having configured a Redundant NVR, you assign it to one or multiple NVRs.

You can perform the following tasks to configure a selected Redundant NVR:

- Configuring video and audio storage
- Assigning NVRs

To configure a Redundant NVR:

- 1. Click the Global Settings tab to display network settings of the selected Redundant NVR.
- Click the **Disk Storage** tab to configure the storage settings of the selected Redundant NVR
- Click the Camera Storage tab to configure the camera settings of the selected Redundant NVR. This page is only available, if on the Assigned NVR page the Backup option is checked.
- 4. Click the **Assigned NVR** tab to add or remove NVRs to the selected Redundant NVR For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

79

12.2.6 **Assigning NVRs to Failover NVRs**



Devices > Expand

For an NVR, you can configure a Failover NVR that takes over the tasks of the NVR if it fails.

Ensure that an NVR is switched to a Failover NVR.

You can easily configure several NVRs to have a Failover NVR assigned.

To assign an NVR to a Failover NVR:

- 1. Expand •
- 2. Select an NVR as required.
- Click the **Global Settings** tab.
- In the Failover NVR list, select the required Failover NVR.

To assign multiple NVRs to a Failover NVR:

- Expand
- 2. Select the desired Failover NVR.
- Click the **Assigned NVRs** tab.
- In the **Time [h]** column, select the required NVRs.
- Click Add NVR.

1.

Each added Primary NVR has the selected Failover NVR assigned.

12.2.7 Assigning NVRs to a Redundant NVR



You can only assign one NVR to a Redundant NVR. If you select a Primary NVR that already has been assigned to another Redundant NVR, the assignment to the previous Redundant NVR is removed.

Ensure that an NVR is switched to a Redundant NVR.

To assign a Primary NVR to a Redundant NVR:

- Select the desired Redundant NVR.
- Click the **Assigned NVR** tab. The table displays all Primary NVRs.
- 3. In the first column, click to check the desired NVR. Each checked primary NVR has the selected Redundant NVR assigned.
- 4. In the **Backup** column, make the desired setting. When cleared, the Camera Storage tab becomes active.

12.2.8 Displaying information on an NVR



You can display the following information on an NVR:

- Network related information
- Disk usage statistics and the available disk space on the NVR.

To display information on an NVR:

• Click the **Disk Storage** tab to view information on the selected NVR.

12.2.9 Changing the network address of an NVR / Failover NVR / Redundant NVR



To change the IP address of an NVR / Failover NVR / Redundant NVR:

- Right-click / I and click Change network address.
 The Network address dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Change the entry in the field according to your requirements.

Managing various devices 13



Main window > 🍱

This chapter provides information on how to configure the devices in your system.

Changing the Device Tree impacts other pages of the Configuration Client:

Maps and Structure

With the devices of the Device Tree you create a user defined structure called Logical Tree. Hence, if you remove a device from the Device Tree, this device is automatically removed from the Logical Tree. But adding a device to the Device Tree does not add this device to the Logical Tree.

Cameras and Recording

All cameras of the Device Tree are available in the Camera Table and the Recording Tables. You cannot modify DiBos or Bosch Allegiant cameras.

Events

All devices of the Device Tree are available in the corresponding Event Tables.

User Groups

You can reduce the functional range of the devices on several permission pages (per user group or Enterprise Account).



1.

to save the settings.



to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

13.1 **Adding devices**



Main window >

You add the following devices to the Device Tree manually:

- BVIP device
- ONVIF camera
- Video Streaming Gateway device
- Bosch Recording Station/DiBos system
- Digital Video Recorder
- Analog matrix

For adding a Bosch Allegiant device, you need a valid Allegiant configuration file.

- Bosch VMS workstation
 - A workstation must have the Operator Client software installed.
- Communication device
- Bosch ATM/POS Bridge, ATM device
- Virtual input
- Network monitoring device
- Bosch IntuiKey keyboard
- VideoTec DCZ keyboard
- Analog monitor group

- I/O module
- Allegiant CCL emulation

Decoders, encoders, NVRs including VIDOS NVRs, Digital Video Recorders, and VRMs are detected by the network scan.

Notice:

After having added a device, click



to save the settings

Notice:

If you add a BVIP encoder with the **<Auto Detect>** selection, this device must be available in the network.

To add a BVIP device:





Or



Right-click

2. Click Add Encoder.

The **Add Encoder** dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Enter the appropriate IP address.
- 4. In the list, select < Auto Detect>.
- 5. Click **OK**.

The device is added to the system.

To add a DiBos system:

- Right-click —.
- 2. Click Add BRS/DiBos System.

The Add BRS/DiBos System dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Enter the appropriate values.
- 4. Click Scan.

The DiBos system is added to your system.

5. In the displayed message box, click **OK** to confirm.

To add a DVR:

- 1. Right-click .
- 2. Click Add DVR Recorder.

The **Add Dvr** dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Enter the appropriate values.
- 4. Click Scan.

The DVR is added to your system.

5. In the displayed message box, click **OK** to confirm.

To add a Bosch Allegiant device:

Right-click and click Add Allegiant.
 The Open dialog box is displayed.

2. Select the appropriate Allegiant configuration file and click $\mathbf{OK}.$

The Bosch Allegiant device is added to your system.

Note: You can add only one Bosch Allegiant matrix.

To add a Bosch VMS workstation:



The **Add Workstation** dialog box is displayed.

2. Enter the appropriate value click **OK**.



To add an analog monitor group:

1. Expand , right-click and click Add Monitor Group.

The Create New Analog Monitor Group dialog box is displayed.

If you already have performed a network scan, and decoders have been detected, there is already a default analog monitor group available with all detected decoders assigned.

- 2. Make the appropriate settings.
- 3. Click **OK**.

The analog monitor group is added to your system.

To add a communication device:



- 2. Enter the appropriate settings.
- 3. Click OK.

The communication device is added to your system.

To add a peripheral device:

1. Expand , right-click and click the required command.

The appropriate dialog box is displayed.

- 2. Enter the appropriate settings.
- 3. Click OK.

The peripheral device is added to your system.

To add a virtual input:



The corresponding page is displayed.

2. Click Add Inputs.

A row is added to the table.

- 3. Make the appropriate settings.
- 4. Click Add.

2.

The virtual input is added to your system.

To add a network monitoring device:



The **Add SNMP** dialog box is displayed.

Type a name for the SNMP device.

The network monitoring device is added to your system.

To add a CCTV keyboard:

Note: For adding a keyboard you must have added a workstation.



Expand

The corresponding page is displayed.

Click Add Keyboard. 2.

A row is added to the table.

In the appropriate field of the **Keyboard Type** column, select the desired keyboard type: IntuiKev

VideoTec DCZ

- 4. In the appropriate field of the Connection column, select the workstation that is connected with the keyboard.
- Make the appropriate settings. The keyboard is added to your system.

To add an I/O module:





and click Add New ADAM Device.

The Add ADAM dialog box is displayed.

- Type the IP address of the device. If you want to skip the currently selected device and jump to the next one, click **Skip**.
- 3. Select the device type. The corresponding page is displayed.
- 4. Click the **ADAM** tab to change the display names of the inputs if required.
- 5. Click the **Name** tab to change the display names of the Relays if required.



Notice!

You can also perform a scan for ADAM devices (Scan for ADAM Devices). The IP addresses of the devices are detected. If available the device type is preselected. You must confirm this selection.

To add an Allegiant CCL emulation:







The Allegiant CCL Emulation tab is displayed.

- 2. Click to check **Enable Allegiant CCL Emulation**.
- Make the required settings. The Allegiant CCL emulation service is started on the Management Server.

13.2 Adding a VIDOS NVR





Main window > Devices > Expand

The system supports you with a scan for devices. To add a VIDOS NVR:

and click Start Vidos NVR Scan. 1.

The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard dialog box is displayed.

Select the desired VIDOS NVRs.

Click Next >>.

3. Type all user names and passwords of the listed device in the appropriate cells. Click **Test all** to authenticate all devices.

Click **Test selected** to authenticate only the selected devices. This is useful when you repeat the device scan and you want only the new ones to be authenticated.

4. Click Finish.

13.3 Configuring a decoder for use with a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard



Perform the following steps to configure a VIP XD decoder that is connected to a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard.

To configure a decoder:

- 1. Click the appropriate decoder which is used for connecting a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard.
- 2. Click the **Periphery** tab.
- 3. Ensure that the following settings are applied:
 - Serial port function: **Transparent**
 - Baud rate: 19200Stop bits: 1Parity check: None
 - Interface mode: RS232Half-duplex mode: Off

13.4 Configuring the integration of a DiBos system





Notice!

You do not configure the DiBos system itself but only the integration into Bosch VMS.

To scan for new DiBos devices:

Right-click and click Scan for BRS/DiBos Systems.

The DiBos system is scanned for new devices and they are added.

To remove an item:

- 1. Click the Cameras tab, the Relays tab, or the Inputs tab.
- 2. Right-click an item and click **Remove**. The item is removed.

To rename a DiBos device:

- 1. Right-click a DiBos device and click **Rename**.
- 2. Type the new name for the item.

13.5 Configuring the integration of a DVR





Notice

You do not configure the DVR itself but only the integration of the DVR device into Bosch VMS.

To scan for new DVR devices:

- 1. Right-click **la** and click **Scan for DVR Devices**.
 - The Bosch VMS Scan Wizard dialog box for integrating DVR devices is displayed.
- 2. Select the desired devices and click Next >>.
 - The next **Bosch VMS Scan Wizard** dialog box for entering the connection password for DVR devices is displayed.
- In the Password column, type in the appropriate passwords and click Finish.
 The selected DVR devices are added.

To remove an item:

- 1. Click the **Settings** tab, the **Cameras** tab, the **Inputs** tab, or the **Relays** tab.
- 2. Right-click an item and click **Remove**. The item is removed.



Notice!

To restore a removed item, right-click the DVR device and click **Rescan DVR Device**.

To rename a DVR device:

- Right-click a DVR device and click Rename.
- 2. Type the new name for the item.

Related Topics

- DVR (Digital Video Recorder) page, page 151

13.6 Configuring a Bosch Allegiant device



You do not configure the Bosch Allegiant device itself but only the Bosch VMS related properties.

To assign an output to an encoder:

- 1. Click the **Outputs** tab.
- 2. In the Usage column, click Digital Trunk in the desired cells.
- 3. In the **Encoder** column, select the desired encoder.

Adding an input to a Bosch Allegiant device:

- 1. Click the **Inputs** tab.
- 2. Click **Add Inputs**. A new row is added to table.
- 3. Type the required settings in the cells.

Deleting an input:

- 1. Click the **Inputs** tab.
- 2. Click the required table row.
- 3. Click **Delete Input**. The row is deleted from the table.

13.7 Configuring a startup Command Script



You configure a Command Script to be started when the Operator Client on the selected workstation is started.

You must create a corresponding Command Script.

For creating a Command Script, see Managing Command Scripts, page 114.

To configure a startup script:

In the **Startup script:** list, select the required Command Script.

13.8 Changing the network address of a workstation



To change the IP address:

- Right-click and click Change Network Address.
 The Change Network Address dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Change the entry in the field according to your requirements.

13.9 Enabling Forensic Search on a workstation



You must enable Forensic Search on a workstation.

Note:

Enable video content analysis on each encoder. Use the VCA page of the encoder in the Device

To enable Forensic Search:

Click to select the Enable Forensic Search check box.

13.10 Assigning an analog monitor group to a workstation



you can configure that all workstations can control analog monitor groups regardless of the setting here.

To assign an analog monitor group:

▶ In the **Assigned Analog Monitor Groups** column, select the check box.

13.11 Configuring an analog monitor group



Caution!

You cannot control an analog monitor group from within Operator Client when the connection to the Management Server is lost or when Operator Client with Enterprise System is used.

You configure the monitors in an analog monitor group logically in rows and columns. This arrangement does not have to meet the physical arrangement of the monitors.

To configure an analog monitor group:

- In the **Name:** field, type a name for the analog monitor group.
- In the Columns: and Rows: fields, enter the desired values.
- Drag each available decoder to an analog monitor image on the right.

The logical number of the decoder is displayed as a black number on the monitor image and the color of this image changes.

If no decoder is available, unassign a decoder from another analog monitor group or repeat network scan.

- Click the Advanced Configuration tab. 4.
- Change the logical numbers of the assigned decoders as required. If you enter an already used number, a message box is displayed.
- 6. Click Quad View to enable quad view for this decoder.

Note:

We do not recommend configuring quad view for H.264 cameras.

- In the Initial Camera column, select the desired camera.
- In the OSD related columns, select the desired options.

13.12 Adding a monitor wall



Main window >

Maps and Structure

After having added the monitor wall, the user of Operator Client can control this monitor wall. The user can change the monitor layout and assign encoders to monitors.

To add:

- 1. Select the desired decoder.
- 2. If required, enter the maximum number of monitors and configure thumbnails.



3.



- Maps and Structure. 4
- Drag the monitor wall to the Logical Tree. 5.
- If required, configure the access to the monitor wall with corresponding user group permissions.

See also

Add Monitor Wall dialog box, page 160

13.13 Configuring a communication device



To configure a communication device:





- Click the required device:
- 2. Make the appropriate settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.14 Configuring a peripheral device



To configure a peripheral device:

• Change the required settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.15 Configuring network monitoring



To configure the SNMP trap receiver:



- 1. Click to display the **SNMP Trap Receiver** page.
- 2. Make the required settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.16 Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (workstation)



To configure a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a workstation:

- 1. Click the **Settings** tab.
- 2. In the **Keyboard Settings** field, make the required settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.17 Configuring a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (decoder)





Notice!

You cannot connect a VideoTec DCZ keyboard to a decoder.

To configure a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a decoder:

1. In the **Connection** column, click a cell, and select the appropriate decoder.

You can also select a workstation, if the Bosch IntuiKey keyboard is connected to it.



A workstation must be configured on the page.

2. In the **Connection Settings** field, make the required settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.18 Configuring an I/O module



To configure an I/O module:

- 1. Click the **ADAM** tab.
- 2. In the **ADAM type:** list, select the appropriate device type.

Caution!

Do not change the device type if not really necessary.

If you for example change the device type to a type with fewer inputs, all configuration data for the removed inputs get lost.

- 1. Click the **Inputs** tab.
- 2. In the **Name** column, change the display name of an input if required.
- 3. Click the **Relays** tab.
- 4. In the **Relays** column, change the name of a relay if required.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.19 Configuring an Allegiant CCL emulation



To use the CCL commands you need the CCL User Guide. This manual is available in the Online Product Catalog in the document section of each LTC Allegiant Matrix.

Allegiant CCL commands supported in Bosch VMS lists the CCL commands supported in Bosch Video Management System.

To configure an Allegiant CCL emulation:

- 1. Click Enable Allegiant CCL Emulation.
- 2. Configure the communication settings as required.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

13.20 Adding a Mobile Video Service



To add:

- 1. Type in the URI of your Mobile Video Service.
- Click OK
- Mobile Video Service and Management Server now know each other and the Mobile Video Service can receive configuration data from Management Server.

Related Topis

Mobile Video Service page, page 168

14 Configuring the structure

This chapter provides information on how to configure the Logical Tree and how to manage resource files such as maps.



Notice!

If you move a group of devices in the Logical Tree, these devices loose their permission settings. You must set the permissions in the **User Groups** page again.

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- Resource Manager dialog box, page 208
- Select Resource dialog box, page 208
- Sequence Builder dialog box, page 209
- Add Sequence dialog box, page 209
- Add Sequence Step dialog box, page 210
- Add URL dialog box, page 210
- Select Map for Link dialog box, page 210



Click to save the settings.

2. Click to undo the last setting.



Click to activate the configuration.

14.1 Configuring the Logical Tree

14.2 Adding a device to the Logical Tree



Main window >

Maps and Structure

To add a device:

Drag an item from the Device Tree to the required location in the Logical Tree. You can drag a complete node with all sub-items from the Device Tree to the Logical Tree. You can select multiple devices by pressing the CTRL- or the SHIFT-key.

14.3 Removing a tree item



To remove a tree item from the Logical Tree:

Right-click an item in the Logical Tree and click **Remove**. If the selected item has subitems, a message box is displayed. Click **OK** to confirm. The item is removed. When you remove an item from a map folder of the Logical Tree, it is also removed from the map.

14.4 Managing resource files



Main window >





Main window >

You can import resource files in the following formats:

- DWF files (2 D, map resource files)
 - For use in Operator Client, these files are converted to a bitmap format.
- HTML files (map document files)
- MP3 (audio file)
- TXT files (Command Scripts or camera sequences)
- MHT files (Web archives)
- URL files (links to Web pages)
- WAV (audio file)

The imported resource files are added to a database. They are not linked to the original files.



Notice!

After each of the following tasks:



Click to save the settings.

To import a resource file:



Click 1.

The **Import Resource** dialog box is displayed.

- 2. Select one or more files.
- 3. Click Open.

The selected files are added to the list.

If a file has already been imported, a message box is displayed.

If you decide to import an already imported file again, a new entry is added to the list.

To remove a resource file:

- Select a resource file.

The selected resource file is removed from the list.

To rename a resource file:

- Select a resource file.
- Click 🍜
- Enter the new name.

The original file name and creation date persists.

To replace the content of a resource file:

Select a resource file.



The **Replace Resource** dialog box is displayed.

Select a file with the appropriate content and click **Open**. The resource name persists, the original file name is exchanged with the new file name.

To export a resource file:

Select a resource file.



2.

A dialog box for selecting a directory is displayed.

Select the appropriate directory and click **OK**. The original file is exported.

14.5 **Adding a Command Script**



Main window >

Before you can add a Command Script, you must have Command Script files imported or created.

If required, see Configuring Command Scripts, page 114 for details.

To add a Command Script file:

- Select a folder where you want to add the new Command Script.
- Click . The **Select Client Script** dialog box is displayed. 2.
- Select a file in the list.
- Click OK.

A new Command Script is added under the selected folder.

14.6 Managing pre-configured camera sequences



You can perform the following tasks for managing camera sequences:

- Create a camera sequence
- Add a step with a new dwell time to an existing camera sequence
- Remove a step from camera sequence
- Delete a camera sequence

Notice!

When the configuration is changed and activated, a camera sequence (pre-configured or automatic) usually is continued after restart of the Operator Client.

But in the following cases the sequence is not continued:

A monitor where the sequence is configured to be displayed has been removed.

The mode of a monitor (single/quad view) where the sequence is configured to be displayed has been changed.

The logical number of a monitor where the sequence is configured to be displayed is changed.



Notice!

After each of the following tasks:



lick IIII to save the settings.

To create a camera sequence:

1. In the Logical Tree, select a folder where you want to create the camera sequence.



The **Sequence Builder** dialog box is displayed.



4. Enter the appropriate values.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

Click OK.



To add a step with a new dwell time to a camera sequence:

- 1. Select the desired camera sequence.
- 2. Click Add Step.

The Add Sequence Step dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Make the appropriate settings.
- 4. Click **OK**.

A new step is added to the camera sequence.

To remove a step from a camera sequence:

Right-click the desired camera sequence and click **Remove Step**. The step with the highest number is removed.

To delete a camera sequence:

- 1. Select the desired camera sequence.
- 2. Click . The selected camera sequence is removed.

14.7 Adding a camera sequence



You add a camera sequence to the root directory or to a folder of the Logical Tree.

To add a camera sequence:

- 1. In the Logical Tree, select a folder where you want to add the new camera sequence.
- 2. Click The **Sequence Builder** dialog box is displayed.
- 3. In the list, select a camera sequence.
- 4. Click **Add to Logical Tree**. A new is added under the selected folder.

14.8 Adding a folder



Main window > To add a folder:

- Select a folder where you want to add the new folder.
- A new folder is added under the selected folder.
- to rename the folder.
- Type the new name and press ENTER.

14.9 Adding a map



Before you can add a map, you must have map resource files imported.

To import a map resource file see Managing resource files, page 93 for details.

To add a map:

- 1. Ensure that the map resource file that you want to add has already been imported.
- Select a folder where you want to add the new map. 2.
- The **Select Resource** dialog box is displayed. 3.
- Select a file in the list.

If the required files are not available in the list, click Manage... to display the Resource Manager dialog box for importing files.

Click OK.



A new map is added under the selected folder.

The map is displayed.

All devices within this folder are displayed in the upper left corner of the map.

14.10 Adding a link to another map



After you have added at least two maps, you can add a link on one map to the other so that the user can click from one map to a linked one.

To add a link:

- in the Logical Tree. Click a map folder
- 2. Right-click the map and click Create Link. The **Select Map for Link** dialog box is displayed.
 - In the dialog box, click a map
- Click Select.

3.



Drag the item to the appropriate place on the map.

14.11 Assigning a map to a folder



Main window >

Maps and Structure

Before you can assign maps, you must have map resource files imported.

If required, see Managing resource files, page 93 for details.

To assign a map resource file:

Right-click a folder and click Assign Map. The **Select Resource** dialog box is displayed.

Select a map resource file in the list. 2.



3. Click **OK**. The selected folder is displayed as

The map is displayed in the map window.

All items within this folder are displayed in the upper left corner of the map.

14.12 Managing devices on a map



Before you can manage devices on a map you must add a map or assign a map to a folder and add devices to this folder.



Notice!

After each of the following tasks:



Click to save the settings.

To place items on a map:

- Select a map folder.
- Drag devices from the Device Tree to the map folder.

The devices of a map folder are located on the left upper corner of the map.

3. Drag the items to the appropriate places on the map.

To remove an item in the Logical Tree only from the map:

Right-click the item on the map and click **Invisible**.

The item is removed from the map.

The item remains in the Logical Tree.

To make it visible again, right-click the device in the Logical Tree and click Visible In Map.

To remove an item from the map and from the Full Logical Tree:

Right-click the item in the Logical Tree and click Remove.

The item is removed from the map and from the Logical Tree.

To change the icon for the orientation of a camera:

Right-click the item, point to **Change Image**, and then click the appropriate icon. The icon changes accordingly.

To change the color of an item:

Right-click the item and click to **Change Color**. Select the appropriate color. The icon changes accordingly.

14.13 Adding a document



You can add text files, HTML files (including MHT files) or an URL file (containing an Internet address) as documents. And you can add a link to another application.

Before you can add a document, you must have document files imported.

To import document files see Managing resource files, page 93 for details.

To add a map document file:

- 1. Ensure that the document file that you want to add has already been imported.
- 2. Select a folder where you want to add the new document.
- 3. Click •• The Select Resource dialog box is displayed.
- 4. Select a file in the list. If the required files are not available in the list, click **Manage...** to display the **Resource Manager** dialog box for importing files.
- 5. Click **OK**. A new document is added under the selected folder.

15 Configuring schedules



Main window >

Schedules

There are two schedule types available:

- Recording Schedules
- Task Schedules

You can configure a maximum of 10 different Recording Schedules in the Recording Schedule Table. In these segments the cameras can behave differently. For example, they can have different frame rate and resolution settings (to be configured in the **Cameras and Recording** page). In every point in time, exactly one Recording Schedule is valid. There are no gaps and no overlaps.

You configure Task Schedules for scheduling various events which can occur in your system (to be configured in the **Events** page).

See glossary for definitions of Recording Schedules and Task Schedules.

The schedules are used in other pages of the Configuration Client:

- Cameras and Recording page
 - Used to configure recording.
- Events page

Used to determine when events cause logging, alarms, or execution of Command Scripts.

- User Groups page

Used to determine when the members of a user group can log on.

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- Recording Schedules page, page 211
- Task Schedules page, page 211
- Click to save the settings.
- Click to undo the last setting.



Click to activate the configuration.

15.1 Configuring a Recording Schedule



Main window >

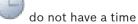
Schedules

You can add exception days and holidays to any Recording Schedule. These settings override the normal weekly settings.

The sequence of decreasing priority is: exception days, holidays, weekdays.

The maximum number of Recording Schedules is 10. The first three entries are configured by

default. You can change these settings. Entries with the gray icon period configured.



Recording Schedules share the same weekdays.

Each Standard Task Schedule has its own weekdays patterns.

To configure a Recording Schedule:

- In the **Recording Schedules** tree, select a schedule.
- Click the Weekdays tab. 2.
- In the Schedule Table field, drag the pointer to select the time periods for the selected schedule. The selected cells are displayed in the color of the selected schedule.

Notes:

You can mark a time period on a weekday of a Recording Schedule with the color of another Recording Schedule.

15.2 Adding a Task Schedule



Main window >

To add a Task Schedule:

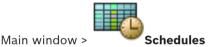
- Click Add.
 - A new entry is added.
- Enter the appropriate name.
- Click **Standard** for a standard Task Schedule or **Recurring** for a recurring Task Schedule. If you change the setting, a message box is displayed. Click OK if you want to change the schedule type.

A standard Task Schedule is displayed as 🗏, a recurring Task Schedule as



Make the appropriate settings for the selected schedule.

15.3 Configuring a standard Task Schedule



Each standard Task Schedule has its own weekdays patterns.

To configure a standard Task Schedule:

- In the Task Schedules tree, select a standard Task Schedule.
- Click the Weekdays tab.
- In the Schedule Table field, drag the pointer to select the time periods for the selected schedule.

Configuring a recurring Task Schedule **15.4**



Main window >

Each recurring Task Schedule has its own day pattern.

To configure a recurring Task Schedule:

- In the **Task Schedules** tree, select a recurring Task Schedule 1.
- In the Recurrence Pattern field, click the frequency with which you want the Task Schedule to recur (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Yearly) and then make the corresponding settings.
- In the **Start date:** list, select the appropriate start date.
- In the **Day Pattern** field, drag the pointer to select the appropriate time period.

15.5 Removing a Task Schedule



Main window >

> Select an item in the Task Schedules tree

To remove a Task Schedule:

- In the Task Schedules tree, select an item.
- 2. Click **Delete**.

The Task Schedule is deleted. All items that are assigned to this schedule, are not scheduled.

15.6 Adding holidays and exception days



Main window >

Caution!

You can configure empty exception days and holidays. Exception days and holidays replace the schedule of the corresponding week day.



Example:

Old configuration:

Weekday schedule configured to be active from 9:00 to 10:00

Exception day schedule configured to be active from 10:00 to 11:00

Result: activity from 10:00 to 11:00 Same behavior is valid for holidays.

You can add holidays and exception days to a Recording Schedule or to a Task Schedule.

Recording Schedules share the same holidays and exception days.

Each standard Task Schedule has its own holidays or exception days patterns.

To add holidays and exception days to a schedule:

- In the **Recording Schedules** or **Task Schedules** tree, select a schedule.
- Click the **Holidays** tab.
- Click Add.

The **Add Holiday(s)** dialog box is displayed.

Select one or more holidays and click **OK**.

The selected holidays are added to the Schedule Table.

Drag the pointer to select the appropriate time period (this is not possible for Recording Schedules).

The selected cells are cleared and vice versa.

- 6. Click the Exception Days tab.
- 7. Click Add.

The **Add Exception Day(s)** dialog box is displayed.

Select one or more special days and click **OK**.

The selected exception days are added to the Schedule Table.

Drag the pointer to select the appropriate time period (this is not possible for Recording Schedules).

The selected cells are cleared and vice versa.

The sorting order of the added holidays and exception days is chronological.

Notes:

You can mark a time period on a holiday or exception day of a Recording Schedule with the color of another Recording Schedule.

Removing holidays and exception days 15.7



Main window >

You can remove holidays and exception days from a Recording Schedule or a Task Schedule.

To remove holidays and exception days from a Task Schedule:

- In the Recording Schedules or Task Schedules tree, select a schedule.
- 2. Click the Holidays tab.
- 3. Click Delete.

The **Select the holidays to delete** dialog box is displayed.

Select one or more holidays and click **OK**.

The selected holidays are removed from the Schedule Table.

- Click the Exception Days tab. 5.
- Click **Delete**.

The **Select the exception days to delete.** dialog box is displayed.

Select one or more exception days and click **OK**. The selected exception days are removed from the Schedule Table.

15.8 Renaming a schedule



Main window >

To rename a schedule:

- In the Recording Schedules or Task Schedules tree, select an item.
- 2.
- Enter the new name and press ENTER. The entry is renamed. 3.

Configuring cameras and recording settings 16



Main window >

Cameras and Recording

This chapter provides information on how to configure the cameras in your Bosch VMS.

You configure various camera properties and the recording settings.

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- Cameras page, page 213
- Scheduled Recording Settings dialog box (only VRM and Local Storage), page 215
- Stream Quality Settings dialog box, page 217
- COM1, page 200
- PTZ Settings dialog box, page 218
- Copy Recording Settings dialog box (NVR only)



to save the settings.





to activate the configuration.

16.1 Copying and pasting in tables

You can configure many objects simultaneously within a Camera Table, an Event Configuration Table, or an Alarm Configuration Table.

You can copy the configurable values of a table row in other rows:

- Copy all values of a row to other rows.
- Copy only one value of a row to another row.
- Copy the value of one cell to a complete column.

You can copy the values in two different ways:

- Copy into the clipboard and then paste.
- Direct copy and paste.

You can determine in which rows to paste:

- Copy in all rows.
- Copy in selected rows.

To copy and paste all configurable values of a row into another row:

- Right-click the row with the desired values and click **Copy Row**. 1.
- Click the row heading of the row that you want to modify.
 - To select more than one row press the CTRL key and point to the other row headings.
- Right-click the table and click **Paste**. 3.

The values are copied.

To copy and paste one value of a row into another row:

- 1. Right-click the row with the desired values and click **Copy Row**.
- Right-click the cell that you want to modify, point to Paste Cell to, and click Current Cell. The value is copied.

To copy all configurable values directly:

Click the row heading of the row that you want to modify. To select more than one row press the CTRL key and point to the other row headings. Right-click the row with the desired values, point to Copy Row to, and click Selected Rows

The values are copied.

To copy one value directly:

- Click the row heading of the row that you want to modify.
 - To select more than one row press the CTRL key and point to the other row headings.
- Right-click the cell with the desired value, point to Copy Cell to, and click Selection in Column .

The value is copied.

To copy a value of a cell to all other cells in this column:

Right-click the cell with the desired value, point to Copy Cell to, and click Complete

The value is copied.

To duplicate a row:

Right-click the row and click Add Duplicated Row.

The row is added below with a new name.

16.2 Configuring stream quality settings

To add a stream quality settings entry:



- to add a new entry in the list.
- Type in a name.

To remove a stream quality settings entry:



Select an entry in the list and click You cannot delete default entries.

To rename a stream quality settings entry:

- Select an entry in the list.
- Enter the new name in the Name: field. You cannot rename default entries.
- 3. Click **OK**.

To configure stream quality settings:

- Select an entry in the list.
- Make the appropriate settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

16.3 Configuring camera properties



To change camera properties:

- In the **Camera** column, click a cell and type a new name for the camera. This name is displayed in all other places where cameras are listed.
- 2. Only for VRM and Live Only: In the Stream 1 Codec or Stream 2 Codec column, select the appropriate codec for encoding stream 1 or stream 2.
- Only for VRM and Live Only: In the Live Video column, configure the quality of live display. For these devices, you can only set the live quality per camera, not per schedule.
- 4. Make the appropriate settings in the other columns.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

16.4 Configuring recording settings (only VRM and Local Storage)

To add a recording settings entry:

- to add a new entry in the list.
- Type in a name. 2.

To remove a recording settings entry:

Select an entry in the list and click You cannot delete default entries.

To rename a recording settings entry:

- 1. Select an entry in the list.
- Enter the new name in the Name: field. You cannot rename default entries.
- Click OK. 3.

To configure recording settings:

- Select an entry in the list.
- Make the appropriate settings and click **OK**.



In the **Recording** column, select the desired recording setting for each encoder. For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

16.5 **Configuring recording settings (only NVR)**



tab (for example



Before you configure the recording settings, configure the stream quality levels.

Note: For recording, ensure that the corresponding NVR is configured properly (Devices >

Notice!

For all encoders, live view settings are also used for pre-event recording.

For encoders that support dual-streaming, the settings for live/pre-event recording, motion recording, and alarm recording are all configured independently.



For encoders that support only a single stream (e.g., the VideoJet 8004), live viewing and recording use the same stream. In this case, the recording settings take priority, so the live view uses the stream quality settings for continuous, motion, and alarm recording. You can enter a setting for live/pre-event only if continuous recording is disabled.

You can switch the live stream from stream 2 (default) to stream 1 for a workstation

> Settings tab > Override recording settings) or for an (**Devices** > Expand encoder. This setting does not affect pre-event recording.

To configure recording settings:

- In the volumn of Continuous Recording, select the desired stream quality or disable continuous recording.
- In the column, select a check box to activate audio.
- In the volumn of Live/Pre-event Recording, select the desired stream quality or select stream 1.
- In the column, select a check box to activate audio.
- In the volumn of Motion Recording, select the desired stream quality or disable motion recording.
- In the quality column, select a check box to activate audio.
- In the **Pre-event [s]** column, click a cell and type the appropriate time.
- In the **Post-event [s]** column, click a cell and type the appropriate time.
- In the volumn of Alarm Recording, select the desired stream quality or disable alarm 9. recording
- 10. In the \P column, select a check box to activate audio.
- 11. In the **Pre-event [s]** column, click a cell and type the appropriate time.
- 12. In the Post-event [s] column, click a cell and type the appropriate time.

Notice!

If pre-event time for motion recording and pre-event time for alarm recording differ, the higher value is used for both.

If the configured pre-event time would overlap a preceding alarm or motion recording, the pre-event recording starts after the preceding recording is finished.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

16.6 **Configuring PTZ port settings**



You can only configure port settings for an encoder where the control of the camera is available and activated.

When the encoder or PTZ camera is exchanged, the port settings are not retained. You must again configure them.

After a firmware update check the port settings.

To configure the port settings of an encoder:

Make the appropriate settings. The settings are valid immediately after saving. You do not have to activate the configuration.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

16.7 **Configuring PTZ camera settings**



First configure the port settings of your PTZ camera before you can configure the PTZ camera settings. Otherwise the PTZ control is not working in this dialog box.

To configure a control of a camera:

- In the Camera Table, select the required encoder.
- column, select the check box. To activate the control of a camera: In the 2.
- Click the The dialog box for configuring PTZ settings is displayed.
- Make the appropriate settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

Click OK.

Configuring events and alarms 17



Main window >

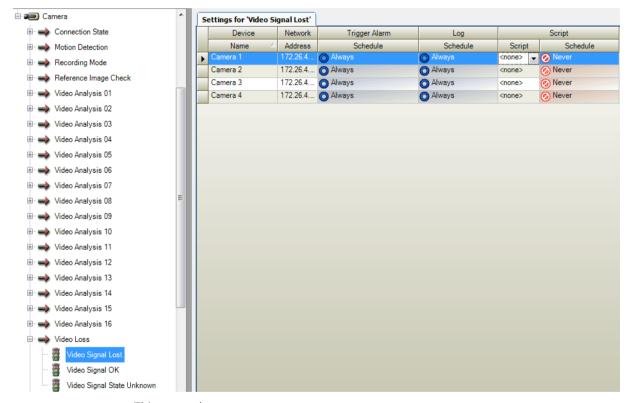
Alarms

This chapter provides information on how to configure events and alarms in your system.

The available events are grouped beyond their corresponding devices.

In the **Events** page, you configure when an event in your Bosch VMS triggers an alarm, executes a Command Script, and is logged.

Example (part of an Event Configuration Table):



This example means:

If the video signal of the selected camera gets lost, an alarm is triggered, the event is logged, and no script is executed.

In Alarms, you define how an alarm is displayed, and which cameras are displayed and recorded in case of an alarm.

Some system events are configured as alarms by default.

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- Command Script Editor dialog box, page 221
- Create Compound Event / Edit Compound Event dialog box, page 222
- Select Script Language dialog box, page 222
- Alarm Settings dialog box, page 225
- Select Image Pane Content dialog box, page 225
- Alarm Options dialog box, page 226



Click to save the settings.



to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

17.1 Copying and pasting in tables

You can configure many objects simultaneously within a Camera Table, an Event Configuration Table, or an Alarm Configuration Table with a few clicks.

For detailed information, see Copying and pasting in tables, page 103.

17.2 Removing a table row



Main window >

Alarms

You can only remove a table row that you or another user have added, i.e. you can delete duplicated events or Compound Events.

Compound Events are located in the Event Tree under System Devices > Compound Events.

To remove a table row:

- Select the row.

17.3 Managing resource files

For detailed information see:

Managing resource files, page 93.

17.4 Configuring an event



Main window >

To configure an event:

- In the tree, select an event or event state, for example System Devices > Authentication > Operator Authentication Rejected.
 - The corresponding Event Configuration Table is displayed.
- In the Trigger Alarm Schedule column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the alarm is triggered. Select one of the Recording Schedules or Task Schedules that you have configured in the Schedules page.
- 3. In the **Log Schedule** column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the event is logged.
- In the **Script Script** column, click a cell and select an appropriate Command Script.
- In the **Script Schedule** column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the event triggers the start of the Command Script.

17.5 **Duplicating an event**



Main window >

Events

You can duplicate an event to trigger different alarms for a particular event.

To duplicate an event:

- In the tree, select an event condition. The corresponding Event Configuration Table is displayed.
- 2. Select a table row.
 - A new table row is added below. It has the default settings.

17.6 Logging user events



Main window >

Events > Expand **System Devices** > **User Actions**

You can configure the logging behavior of several user actions for each available user group individually.

Example:

To log user events:

- Select a user event to configure its logging behavior, e.g. **Operator Logon**. The corresponding Event Configuration Table is displayed. Each user group is displayed in the **Device** column.
- 2. If available: In the Trigger Alarm Schedule column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule.
 - The schedule determines when the alarm that is supposed to notify the user is triggered. You can select one of the Recording Schedules or Task Schedules that you have configured in Schedules.
- 3. In the Log Schedule column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the event is logged. In the example, the Operator logon of the Admin Group and the Power User Group are not logged whereas the Operator logon of the Live User Group are logged during Day schedule.

17.7 **Configuring user event buttons**



Main window >

You can configure the user event buttons available in the Operator Client. You can configure that one or more user event buttons are not displayed in the Operator Client.

On the User Groups page, you configure that the user event buttons are only available in the Operator Client of the corresponding user group.

To configure user event buttons:

In the tree, select System Devices > Operator Client Event Buttons > Event Button Pressed.

The corresponding Event Configuration Table is displayed.

Select a user event button to configure its behavior.

- In the **Trigger Alarm Schedule** column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the alarm that is supposed to notify the user is triggered.
- In the **Log Schedule** column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the event is logged. Selecting Never makes the user event button unavailable in the Operator Client of all user groups that have the user event button permission.
- 5. In the Script Script column, click a cell and select an appropriate Command Script.
- 6. In the **Script Schedule** column, click a cell and select the appropriate schedule. The schedule determines when the Command Script is executed.

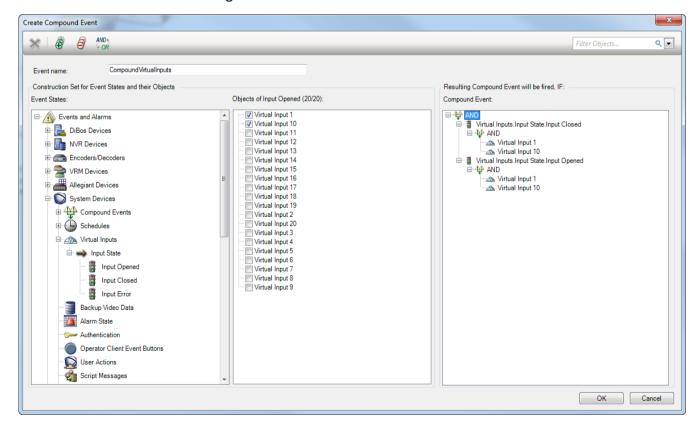
17.8 **Creating a Compound Event**



Main window >

You create a Compound Event. You can combine only state changes and their objects. Objects can be for example schedules or devices. You can combine both the state changes and their objects with the Boolean expressions AND and OR.

Example: You combine the connection states of an IP camera and a decoder. The Compound Event shall only occur when both the devices loose their connection. In this case you use the AND operator for the two objects (the IP camera and the decoder) and for the two connection states Video Signal Lost and Disconnected.



To create a Compound Event:

- In the **Event name:** field, enter a name for the Compound Event.
- In the **Event States:** field, select an event state. The available objects are displayed in the **Objects:** field.

In the **Objects:** field select device as required.

The corresponding event and the selected devices are added to the Compound Event

4. In the Compound Event: field, right-click a Boolean operation and change it where

A Boolean operation defines the combination of its immediate child elements.

Click OK.

The new Compound Event is added to the Event Configuration Table. You find it in the Event Tree below System Devices.

17.9 **Editing a Compound Event**



Main window >

You can change a previously created Compound Event.

To edit a Compound Event:

- In the Event Tree, expand System Devices > Compound Event State > Compound Event
- 2. In the Event Configuration Table, in the **Device** column, right-click the required Compound Event and click Edit.

The **Edit Compound Event** dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Make the required changes.
- 4. Click OK.

The Compound Event is changed.

17.10 Configuring an alarm



Main window >

Before configuring an alarm you must configure the trigger in **Events**.

To configure an alarm:

In the tree, select an alarm, for example System Devices > Authentication > Operator Authentication Rejected.

The corresponding Alarm Configuration Table is displayed.

- In the **Priority** column, click ... in a cell to type the alarm priority for the selected alarm (100 is low priority, 1 is high priority).
 - In the Title column, click ... in a cell to type the title of the alarm to be displayed in Bosch VMS, for example in the Alarm List.
 - In the Color column, click ... in a cell to display a dialog box for selecting a color for the alarm to be displayed in the Operator Client, for example in the Alarm List.
- 3. In the 1-5 columns, click ... in a cell to display the Select Image Pane Content dialog box. Make the required settings.
- In the Audio File column, click ... in a cell to display a dialog box for selecting an audio file that is played in case of an alarm.
- 5. In the Alarm Options column, click ... in a cell to display the Alarm Options dialog box. This dialog box allows you to configure the following settings for alarms:
 - Cameras that start recording in case of an alarm
 - Triggering PTZ commands in case of alarm

- Notifications that are sent in case of an alarm
 - Note: The date of the time zone of the Management Server is used.
- Workflow that has to be processed in case of an alarm
- Assigning cameras that are displayed in analog monitor groups in case of an alarm.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

17.11 Configuring settings for all alarms



Main window >

Alarms

You can set the following alarm settings that are valid for this Management Server:

- Number of Image panes per alarm
- Auto-clear time
- Manual alarm recording time
- Configure the behavior of all analog monitor groups

To configure all alarms:



The Alarm Settings dialog box is displayed.

Make the appropriate settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

Click OK.

Configuring Command Scripts 18

This chapter describes how to configure Command Scripts. Command Scripts appear at various places of Bosch VMS.



to save the settings.

to undo the last setting.



to activate the configuration.

18.1 **Managing Command Scripts**

Main window

You can create a Command Script using the following scripting languages:

- C#
- VB.Net

You cannot change the scripting language of an existing Command Script.

You can create a Client Script or a Server Script.

You can add scriptlets to every script.

To get help on entering code, click with in the Command Script Editor dialog box. The Bosch Script API help is displayed.

To add a server scriptlet:

- On the **Tools** menu, click the **Command Script Editor...** command. The Select Script Language dialog box is displayed if no Command Script was created
- In the **Script Language:** list, select the required entry.
 - The **Command Script Editor** dialog box is displayed.
- In the left pane of the Command Script Editor dialog box, right-click ServerScript and click New Scriptlet.

A new scriptlet is added.

4. Enter your code.

To add a client scriptlet

- On the Tools menu, click the Command Script Editor... command.
 - The Select Script Language dialog box is displayed if no Command Script was created yet.
- 2. In the **Script Language:** list, select the required entry.
 - The **Command Script Editor** dialog box is displayed.
- 3. In the left pane of the Command Script Editor dialog box, right-click ClientScript and click **New Scriptlet**.

A new scriptlet is added.

Enter your code.

To delete a scriptlet:

- Open the Command Script Editor dialog box. 1.
- Click the **Server Script** tab or the **Client Script** tab as required. 2.
- In the Event Tree, right-click the required event and click The scriptlet is removed.

To exit the Command Script Editor dialog box:

Main window >

18.2 Configuring a Command Script to be started automatically







You configure a Client Command Script to be started in the following cases:

- Workstation starts up.
- User accepts an alarm.

To configure a Command Script at workstation startup:

See Configuring a startup Command Script.

To configure a Command Script after user has accepted an alarm:

- Click the **Workflow** tab.
- In the Execute the following Client Script when alarm is accepted: list, select the desired Client Script.

This script is started as soon as a user accepts the selected alarm.

18.3 Importing a Command Script

Main window

You can import Command Scripts that have been developed on another computer. The file must be written in the same scripting language that you used on your system.

To import a Command Script:

On the Tools menu, click the Command Script Editor... command. The Command Script Editor dialog box is displayed.



The dialog box for opening a file is displayed.

Select the required script file and click OK.

18.4 Exporting a Command Script

Main window

You can export Command Scripts that have been developed on another computer.

To export a Command Script:

On the Tools menu, click the Command Script Editor... command. The Command Script Editor dialog box is displayed.



The dialog box for saving a file is displayed.

Type the required script file name and click **OK**.

18.5 Configuring a startup Command Script



You configure a Command Script to be started when the Operator Client on the selected workstation is started.

> Settings page

You must create a corresponding Command Script.

For creating a Command Script, see Managing Command Scripts, page 114.

To configure a startup script:

In the **Startup script:** list, select the required Command Script.

Configuring users, permissions and Enterprise Access 19



Main window >

User Groups

This chapter provides information on how to configure user groups, Enterprise User Groups and Enterprise Access. You make all settings per user group and not per user. A user can only be the member of one user group or Enterprise User Group.

You cannot change the settings of a default user group.

This user group has access to all the devices of the Full Logical Tree and is assigned the Always schedule.

For accessing the Windows user groups of a domain, LDAP user groups are used.

Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- User Properties page, page 232
- New User Group/Enterprise Account dialog box, page 230
- User Group Properties page, page 231
- Add New Dual Authorization Group dialog box, page 232
- LDAP Server Settings dialog box, page 236
- Copy User Group Permissions dialog box, page 235
- Select User Groups dialog box, page 233
- Logical Tree page, page 239
- Events and Alarms page, page 236
- Operator Features page, page 239
- Priorities page, page 241
- Camera Permissions page, page 234
- Decoder Permissions page, page 236
- User Interface page, page 241
- to save the settings.
- to undo the last setting.



19.1 Creating a user



User Groups > User Groups tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab

You create a user as a new member of an existing user group or Enterprise User Group.



Notice!

A user who wants to operate a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard connected to a decoder, must have a number-only user name and password. The user name can have maximum 3 numbers; the password can have maximum 6 numbers.

To create a user:

- Select a group and click 1.
 - A new user is added to the **User Groups** tree.
- 2. Right-click the new user and click **Rename**.
- Enter the desired name and press ENTER.
- On the **User Properties** page, enter the user name and the password.

19.2 Creating a group or account



Main window >

User Groups

You can create a standard user group, an Enterprise User Group or an Enterprise Account. For adapting the user group permissions to your requirements, create a new user group and change its settings.

You perform the task of creating an Enterprise User Group for an Enterprise Management system on the Enterprise Management Server.

You create an Enterprise User Group with users to configure their operating permissions. These operating permissions are available on an Operator Client that is connected to the

Enterprise Management Server. An example of an operating permission is the user interface of the alarm monitor.

You perform the task of creating an Enterprise Account on a Management Server. Repeat this task on each Management Server that is a member of your Enterprise System.

You create an Enterprise Account to configure the device permissions for an Operator Client using an Enterprise System.

To create a group or account:

- Click the desired tab for the group or account that you want to add:
 - User Groups
 - Enterprise User Groups
 - Enterprise Access



2. Click

The appropriate dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Type in the name and a description.
- For an Enterprise Account enter a password and confirm this password.
- 5. Click OK.

A new group or account is added to the corresponding tree.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

Related Topics

- Enterprise System, page 20
- User Group Properties page, page 231
- Credentials page, page 238
- Server Access page, page 242

- New User Group/Enterprise Account dialog box, page 230
- Add New Dual Authorization Group dialog box, page 232

19.3 Creating a dual authorization group



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Dual Authorization Group dialog box

You select two groups. The members of these groups are the members of the new dual authorization group.

You can configure dual authorization for user groups and for Enterprise User Groups.

To create:

- Type in a name and description.
- 2.

The appropriate dialog box is displayed.

- Select a group in each list.
 - It is possible to select the same group in the second list.
- 4. For each group, select **Force dual authorization** if required.

When this check box is selected, each user of the first group can only log on together with a user of the second group.

When this check box is cleared, each user of the first group can log on alone but he only has the access rights of his group.

Related Topics

- Logon Pair Properties page, page 233
- Add New Dual Authorization Group dialog box, page 232
- Select User Groups dialog box, page 233

19.4 **Configuring LDAP settings**



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Permissions tab

Caution!

Do not assign an LDAP group to different Bosch VMS user groups. This can result in not intended permissions for these users.



Notice!

Type the search paths accurately. Wrong paths can make the search on an LDAP server very slow.

You configure LDAP groups in standard user groups or Enterprise User Groups.

To configure LDAP settings:

- Click the **User Group Properties** tab.
- In the LDAP Properties field, make the appropriate settings.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

19.5 Associating an LDAP group



Main window >

User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Permissions tab

You associate an LDAP group with a Bosch VMS user group to give the users of this LDAP group access to the Operator Client. The users of the LDAP group have the access rights of the user group where you configure the LDAP group.

You probably need the help of the IT administrator who is responsible for the LDAP server. You configure LDAP groups in standard user groups or Enterprise User Groups.

To associate an LDAP group:

- Click the User Group Properties tab.
- In the LDAP Properties field, click Settings. The **LDAP Server Settings** dialog box is displayed.
- Enter the settings of your LDAP server and click **OK**.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

In the **LDAP Groups:** list, double-click an LDAP group. This LDAP group is entered in the **Associated LDAP group:** field.

19.6 Scheduling user logon permission



Main window >

User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >

Permissions tab

You can limit the members of a user group or Enterprise User Group to log on to their computers at specified time periods.

You cannot change these settings for a default user group.

To schedule logging on:

- Click the User Group Properties tab.
- In the **Logon schedule:** list, select a schedule.

19.7 **Configuring operating permissions**



Permissions tab

You can configure operating permissions like Logbook access or user interface settings. You cannot change these settings for a default user group.

You configure operating permissions in standard user groups or Enterprise User Groups.

To configure operating permissions:

- Click the **Operating Permissions** tab.
- Select or clear the check boxes as appropriate.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

See also

- User Group Properties page, page 231
- User Interface page, page 241
- Operator Features page, page 239
- Server Access page, page 242
- Priorities page, page 241

19.8 Configuring user interface settings



Permissions tab

You can configure a multi monitor mode with up to 4 monitors. You set for every monitor what is displayed on it, e.g. monitor 2 only displays Live Image panes or Monitor 1 and Monitor 2 use the 16:9 aspect ratio for HD cameras.

You configure operating permissions in standard user groups or Enterprise User Groups.

To configure user interface settings:

Click the **User Interface** tab.

- 2. In the 4 monitor list, select the required entries. If you click **Restore Default**, all list entries are reset to their default settings.
- 3. If required, select the Save settings when shutting down check box to enable the user to save his individual settings when shutting down the Operator Client.

19.9 **Configuring permissions for Logical Tree**



User Groups > User Groups tab > Device Permissions tab



User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > Device Permissions tab

You can set the permissions for all devices of the Logical Tree independently.

In an Enterprise System, these permissions are valid for the access of Enterprise User Group users to the devices of a local Management Server, controlled by Enterprise Accounts.

After you have moved permitted devices to a folder that is not permitted for this user group, you must set the permissions for the folder to grant access to its devices.

You cannot change these settings for a default user group.

You configure device permissions in standard user groups or Enterprise Accounts.

To configure permissions:

- 1. In the User Groups tree, select a user group or account.
- Click the **Logical Tree** tab. 2
- Select or clear the check boxes as appropriate.

Selecting an item below a node, automatically selects the node.

Selecting a node, automatically selects all items below.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

19.10 Configuring permissions for events and alarms



User Groups > User Groups tab > Device Permissions tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > **Device Permissions** tab

You configure which events the user group or account is authorized to process.

You cannot change these settings for a default user group.

You configure permissions for events and alarms in standard user groups or Enterprise Accounts.

To configure permission for events and alarms:

- In the User Groups tree, select a user group or account.
- Click the **Events and Alarms** tab.
- 3. Select the check box to enable all available events and alarms.

Or:

Select the required check boxes to enable the appropriate events and alarms.

Configuring camera permissions 19.11



User Groups > User Groups tab > Device Permissions tab



User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > Device Permissions tab Main window >

You can configure various permissions for cameras, e.g. PTZ control.

You cannot change these settings for a default user group.

You configure camera permissions in standard user groups or Enterprise Accounts.

To configure camera permissions:

- In the User Groups tree, select a user group or account.
- Click the Camera Permissions tab.
- Select or clear the check boxes as appropriate.

For detailed information on the various fields, see the Online Help for the appropriate application window.

19.12 Configuring decoder permissions



User Groups > User Groups tab > Device Permissions tab

or



Main window > User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > Device Permissions tab

You can configure permissions for decoders.

You cannot change these settings for a default group.

You configure decoder permissions in standard user groups or Enterprise Accounts.

To configure decoder permissions:

- In the User Groups tree, select a user group or account.
- Click the **Decoder Permissions** tab.
- Select or clear the check boxes as appropriate.

19.13 Configuring various priorities



User Groups > User Groups tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab

or



Main window >

User Groups > Enterprise Access tab

You can configure the following priorities:

- For standard user groups and Enterprise User Groups: You can configure the alarm priorities for Live Mode and Playback Mode.
- For standard user groups and Enterprise Access: You can configure the priorities for acquiring PTZ controls and Bosch Allegiant trunk lines.

You can configure a time period for PTZ locking, i.e. a user with higher priority can take over the camera control from a user with a lower priority and locks it for this time period.

To configure live and playback priorities:

- Select a standard user group or an Enterprise User Group.
- **Click Operating Permissions**. 2.
- Click the **Priorities** tab. 3.
- 4. In the **Automatic Popup Behavior** field, move the sliders as required.

To configure priorities for PTZ and Bosch Allegiant trunk lines:

- 1. Select a standard user group or an Enterprise Account.
- Click Device Permissions tab. 2.
- 3 Click the **Control Priorities** tab
- In the **Control Priorities** field, move the sliders as required. 4.
- In the **Timeout in min.** list, select the required entry.

19.14 Copying user group permissions



User Groups > User Groups tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab



Main window >

User Groups > Enterprise Access tab

You can copy permissions from one group or account to another. You must have configured at least 2 groups or accounts.

To copy permissions:

- In the User Groups tree, select a group or account.
- 2.

Click

The Copy User Group Permissions dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Select the appropriate permissions and the appropriate target group or account.
- Click **OK**. The group permissions of this group are copied to the other group or account. The dialog box is closed.

20 Managing configuration data

Main window

You must activate the current configuration to make it valid for the Management Server and Operator Client. The system reminds you to activate when exiting the Configuration Client. Every activated configuration is saved with the date and with a description if required. At every point in time you can restore a recently activated configuration. All configurations saved in the meantime get lost.

You can export the current configuration in a configuration file and import this file later. This restores the exported configuration. All configurations saved in the meantime get lost. Follow these references to get detailed information on the available application windows:

- Activation Manager dialog box, page 137
- Activate Configuration dialog box, page 138
- License Manager dialog box, page 138
- License Activation dialog box, page 138
- Alarm Settings dialog box, page 139
- Stream Quality Settings dialog box, page 139
- Options dialog box, page 140

20.1 Activating the working configuration

Main window

You activate the currently working configuration. The Operator Client uses the activated configuration after the next start if the user accepted it. If the activation is enforced, all open instances of the Operator Client in the network exit and start again. The user of each Operator Client instance usually does not have to log on again.

You can configure a delayed activation time. If you configure a delayed activation time, the working configuration is not activated at once but at the time configured. If you configure another activation time later (delayed or not does not matter), this time is active now. The first configured activation time is removed.

When you exit the Configuration Client the system reminds you to activate the current working copy of the configuration.



Notice!

If the activation is enforced, each instance of Operator Client restarts when the configuration is activated. Avoid unnecessary activations. Perform activations preferably in the night or during time periods with low activities.

To activate the currently working configuration:



Click

The **Activate Configuration** dialog box is displayed.

- If appropriate, enter a delayed activation time. As per default, the present point in time is configured as activation time. If you do not change the delayed activation time, the activation is performed immediately.
 - If appropriate, click to check Force activation for all Operator Clients.
- Type a description and click **OK**.
 - The current configuration is activated.
 - Each Operator Client workstation is instantly restarted, if connected to the network and

the activation is enforced. If a workstation is not connected, it is restarted as soon it is connected again.

If you configured a delayed activation time, the configuration will be activated later.

Activating a configuration 20.2

Main window

You can activate a previous version of the configuration that you have saved earlier.

To activate a configuration:

- On the System menu, click Activation Manager....
 - The Activation Manager dialog box is displayed.
- In the list, select the configuration you want to activate.
- Click Activate.

A message box is displayed.

Click OK.

The **Activate Configuration** dialog box is displayed.

5. If appropriate, click to check Force activation for all Operator Clients. Each Operator Client workstation is automatically restarted to activate the new configuration. The user cannot refuse the new configuration.

If Force activation for all Operator Clients is not checked, on each Operator Client workstation a dialog box appears for some seconds. The user can refuse or accept the new configuration. The dialog box is closed after a few seconds without user interaction. In this case the new configuration is not accepted.

20.3 **Exporting configuration data**

Main window

You can export the device configuration data of Bosch VMS in a .zip file. This .zip file contains the database file (Export.bvms) and the user data (.dat file).

You can use these files for restoring a system configuration that has been exported before on the same (Enterprise) Management Server or for importing it on another (Enterprise) Management Server. The user data file cannot be imported but you can use it to manually restore the user configuration.

To export configuration data:

On the System menu, click Export Configuration....

The **Export Configuration File** dialog box is displayed.

Note: If your current working copy configuration is not activated (export this working copy and not the activated configuration.

- Click Save. 2
- Enter a filename.

The current configuration is exported. A .zip file with database and user data is created.

Importing configuration data 20.4

Main window

The following use cases are covered:

- Importing a configuration that has been exported (backup has been performed) before on the same server
- Importing a configuration template that has been prepared and exported on another
- Importing the configuration of an earlier Bosch VMS version.

You can only import a configuration if the latest changes of the current working copy are saved and activated.

For importing the configuration data you need the appropriate password.

You cannot import user data.

To import configuration data:

- On the System menu, click Import Configuration....
 - The Import Configuration File dialog box is displayed.
- Select the desired file for import and click **Open**.
 - The **Import Configuration...** dialog box is displayed.
- Enter the appropriate password and click **OK**.
 - The Configuration Client is restarted. You must logon again.
 - The imported configuration is not activated but editable in Configuration Client.



Notice!

If you want to continue editing the configuration that has been activated for your Management Server, perform a rollback in the Activate Configuration dialog box.

20.5 **Exporting configuration data to OPC**

Main window

You can export the device configuration data of Bosch VMS in an XML file to import it in an OPC Server application. The file must be stored in the bin directory of your Bosch VMS installation.

For configuring a Bosch VMS - BIS connection the Bosch VMS - BIS Interface Configuration Manual is available.

Caution!

Install OPC server and Bosch VMS Management Server on different computers.

If both the servers run on the same computer, the performance of the systems is reduced. Additionally serious software crashes can appear.

To export configuration data:

- 1. On the System menu, click Export Device Information for OPC.... The **Export Device Information File** dialog box is displayed.
- Enter a file name and click Save.

The file is saved.

You can import this file in your OPC server application.

Configuration examples 21

This chapter contains examples on how to configure selected devices in Bosch VMS.

21.1 **Creating an Enterprise System**

You perform the tasks for creating an Enterprise System on a Enterprise Management Server and on multiple Management Server computers.

This example covers the Scenario 1 described in the Enterprise System chapter:

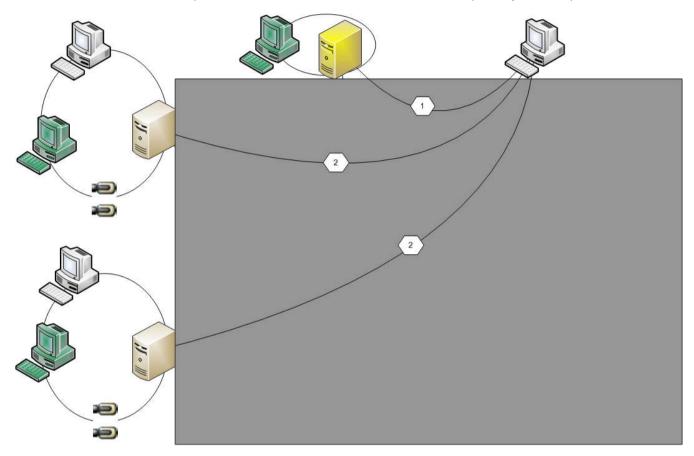


Figure 21.1: Enterprise Scenario 1

You need valid licenses for using an Enterprise System.

21.1.1 **Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System**

Main window > 🍱 Devices > Enterprise System > Server List

You configure multiple Management Server computers in the Server List of an appropriate Management Server.

For simultaneous access you must configure one or more Enterprise User Groups. This changes this Management Server to an Enterprise Management Server.

A user of Operator Client can log on with a user name of an Enterprise User Group to get simultaneous access to the Management Server computers configured in the Server List. Operating permissions are configured on the Enterprise Management Server in **Groups**, Enterprise User Group tab.



Device permissions are configured on each Management Server in Enterprise Access tab.

- to save the settings.
- to undo the last setting.
- to activate the configuration.

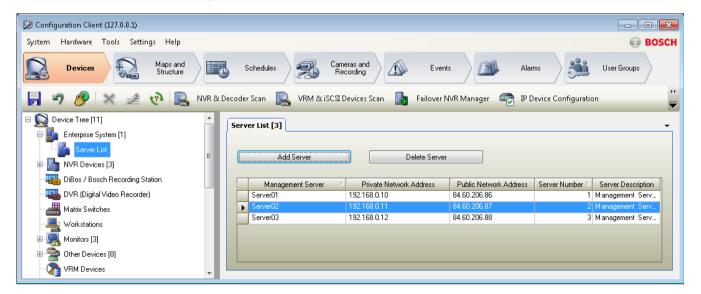
To add servers:

- Click Add Server.
 - The **Add Server** dialog box is displayed.
- 2. Type in a display name for the server and the network address (DNS name or IP address).
- If required, type in a public network address (DNS name or IP address) for remote access.
- 4. Click OK.
- Repeat these steps until you have added all desired Management Server computers.

The Management Server computers for your Enterprise System are configured.

Now configure the desired Enterprise User Groups and the Enterprise Access.

The following screenshot shows an example:



Related Topics

- Enterprise System, page 20
- Server List page, page 143
- User Groups page, page 229
- Using Server Lookup, page 55

21.1.2 **Creating an Enterprise User Group**



Main window >

User Groups

You perform the task of creating an Enterprise User Group for an Enterprise Management system on the Enterprise Management Server.

You create an Enterprise User Group with users to configure their operating permissions. These operating permissions are available on an Operator Client that is connected to the Enterprise Management Server. An example of an operating permission is the user interface of the alarm monitor.

To create an Enterprise User Group:

- Click the Enterprise User Groups tab.
- Click

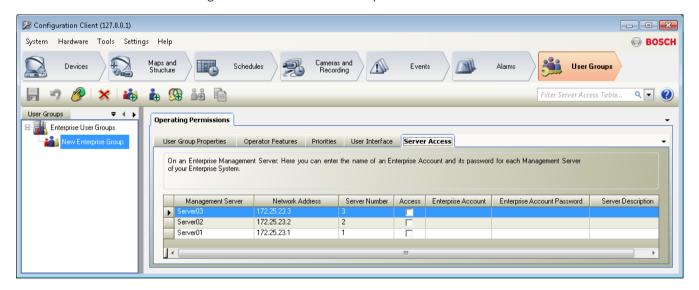
The **New Enterprise User Group** dialog box is displayed.

- 3. Type in the name and a description.
- 4. Click **OK**.

The Enterprise User Group is added to the corresponding tree.

Configure the operating permissions and server access for the configured Management Server computers as required.

The following screenshot shows an example:



21.1.3 **Creating an Enterprise Account**



You perform the task of creating an Enterprise Account on a Management Server. Repeat this task on each Management Server that is a member of your Enterprise System.

You create an Enterprise Account to configure the device permissions for an Operator Client using an Enterprise System.

To create an Enterprise Account:

Click the Enterprise Access tab.



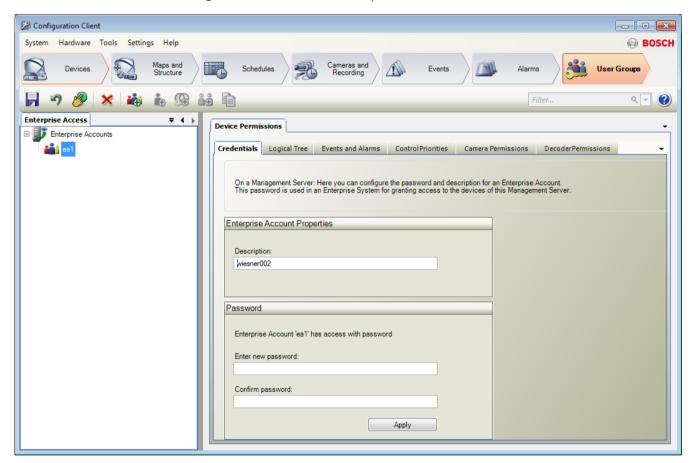
The **New Enterprise Account** dialog box is displayed.

- Type in the name and a description.
- Click OK.

The Enterprise Account is added to the corresponding tree.

Configure the credentials and the device permissions as required.

The following screenshot shows an example:



21.2 Adding a Bosch ATM/POS bridge

This example describes how to set up a Bosch ATM/POS bridge.

Configuring the ATM/POS bridge

- Ensure that the device is powered. 1.
- To configure the IP address and subnet mask of the device connect it to a COM port of your computer with a RS232 cable (use the specified Bosch cable for connection). See the Installation Manual of the Bosch ATM/POS bridge for details.
- 3. On this computer, start a Hyper terminal session (usually: Start > Programs > Accessories > Communications > Hyper Terminal).
- Type a name for the session and click **OK**.
- Select the COM port number and click **OK**. 5.
- 6. Enter the following COM port settings:
 - 9600 bits/s
 - 8 data bits

- no parity
- 1 stop bit
- hardware flow control

Click OK.

- 7. Press F1 for displaying the system options menu of the device.
- Enter 1 to set the IP address and the subnet mask as required.
- Leave the default settings for the ports:
 - port1: **4201**
 - port2: **4200**

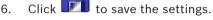
Adding the ATM/POS bridge to Bosch VMS

- 1. Connect the device to your Bosch VMS network.
- Start Configuration Client. 2.



The Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box is displayed.

- Type a name as desired and type the settings that you configured earlier.
- 5. Click the **Inputs** tab and select the required inputs.





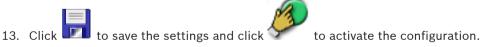
7. Click Events.



- In the Trigger Alarm list, select Always to ensure that this event always triggers an alarm. If you want the event trigger an alarm only during a certain time span, select a schedule.
- 10. Click to save the settings.



- 11. Click Alarms.
- 12. Configure the desired alarm settings for this event.



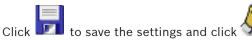
14. Perform a test to ensure that the alarm is working as desired.

21.3 Adding a Bosch Allegiant input alarm

After a Bosch Allegiant device is added to Bosch VMS, you add Allegiant alarm inputs.

- On the Device Tree, click the Allegiant device entry.
- Click the **Inputs** tab and click **Add Input**. 2.
- Add the desired input alarms. 3.
- 4. Click Events.
- 5. In the Event Tree, expand Allegiant Devices, expand Allegiant Input, and click Input **Closed** or **Input Opened** (depends on your application).

In the Trigger Alarm list, select Always to ensure that an event always triggers an alarm. If you want the event trigger an alarm only during a certain time span, select a schedule.





to activate the configuration.

Perform a test to ensure that the alarm is working as desired.

21.4 Adding and configuring 2 Dinion IP cameras with VRM recording

This section describes how to add 2 Dinion IP cameras for VRM recording, how to configure different recording settings and how to configure Forensic Search for these cameras.

Prerequisite:

VRM and iSCSI devices are properly configured.

This means:

- The VRM is added to the Device Tree.
- An iSCSI device with configured target and LUN is assigned to this VRM.

To add the IP cameras to an existing VRM:



Right-click 1.



The **Add Encoder** dialog box is displayed.

Type the IP address of the IP camera and select the encoder type (Dinion IP). Click OK.

Repeat this step for the other IP camera.

To add the IP cameras to the Logical Tree:



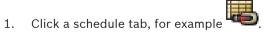
Drag the cameras to the Logical Tree.

To change camera properties:



- In the Live Video column, configure the quality of live display. For these devices, you can only set the live quality per camera, not schedule dependent.
- Make the appropriate settings in the other columns.

To configure recording settings for the cameras:



- In the V column, click a cell and select the appropriate stream quality.
- Under Continuous or Prealarm Recording, in the Select column, select the desired recording mode.

If you click **Prealarm**: Click a cell in the **Duration** column to select the alarm recording time before the alarm in seconds.

- Under Alarm Recording, in the Duration column, click a cell and type the desired recording time.
- Repeat the previous steps to configure the recording settings for the other camera. 5.

To enable Forensic Search on a workstation:



- Click the icon of your workstation. 1.
- 2. Click the **Settings** tab.
- Click to select the **Enable Forensic Search** check box.

Performing a Forensic Search



Perform the Forensic Search on the workstation where you have enabled Forensic Search.

To perform a Forensic Search:

Using the Hairline, select the time period on the Timeline and select the corresponding Image pane.



Click 2.

The Forensic Search dialog box is displayed.

The selected time period is copied to the **Start:** and **End:** fields.

If required, change the values. Click **2**.

- In the **Algorithm:** list, select an IVA entry.
- In the **Surveillance Tasks** field, configure your Forensic Search. You can find information on this in the relevant documents on the product CD supplied.
- Click **Search** to start the Forensic Search.



window with the matching entries is displayed.

Global Configuration Client windows 22

This chapter contains information on some basic application windows available in Bosch VMS Configuration Client.

22.1 **Configuration window**

Main window

Allows you to configure your system. The buttons in the toolbar represent the various pages which you must configure to get a running system. Their sequence represents the recommended workflow of configuration.

Click a tree item to display the available property pages.



Devices

Click to display the **Devices** page with all devices connected to the system.



Maps and Structure

Click to display the Maps and Structure page with Logical Tree, Device Tree, and maps.



Schedules

Click to display the **Recording Schedules** and **Task Schedules** page.



Cameras and Recording

Click to display the Cameras and Recording page with the Camera Table and the recording settings of all cameras.



Events

Click to display the **Events** page.



Alarms

Click to display the Alarms page.



User Groups

Click to display the **User Groups** page with all users.



Click to save the changed settings of the current window.



Click to restore the saved settings of the current window.



Click to display the Activate Configuration dialog box.



Click to delete the selected item. (Not available on every page).



Click to rename the selected item. (Not available on every page).



Click to display help information on the current window.



Click to refresh the state information for all devices (not available on every page). You can refresh the state of a single device: Right-click the device and click **Refresh state**.

Note: When you have a large system with several 1000 devices configured, the process of refreshing states can take a long time.

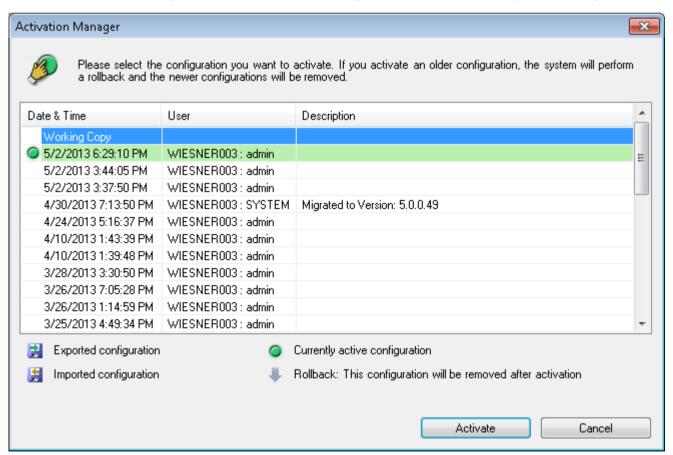
22.2 Menu commands

System menu commands		
	Save Changes	Saves all changes made on this page.
	Undo All Changes on Page	Restores the settings of this page since the last saving.
	Activation Manager	Displays the Activation Manager dialog box.
	Export Configuration	Displays the Export Configuration File dialog box.
	Import Configuration	Displays the Import Configuration File dialog box.
	Export Device Information for OPC	Displays a dialog box for creating a configuration file that you can import in a 3rd party management system.
	Exit	Exits the program.
Hardware menu commands		
	Initial Device Scan	Displays the Initial Device Scan dialog box.
	NVR & Decoder Scan	Displays the NVR & Decoder Scan dialog box.
	Failover NVR Manager	Displays a dialog box for re-assigning cameras to a fixed NVR.
Tools menu commands		
	Command Script Editor	Displays the Command Script Editor dialog box
	Resource Manager	Displays the Resource Manager dialog box.
	Sequence Builder	Displays the Sequence Builder dialog box.

	Resource Converter	Displays the Resource Converter dialog box if old map resources in DWF format are available.	
	License Manager	Displays the License Manager dialog box.	
Settin	gs menu commands		
	Alarm Settings	Displays the Alarm Settings dialog box.	
	Set Recording Qualities	Displays the Stream Quality Settings dialog box.	
	Remote Access Settings	Displays the Remote Access Settings dialog box.	
	Options	Displays the Options dialog box.	
Help menu commands			
	Help	Displays the Bosch VMS Application Help.	
	About	Displays a dialog box containing information on the installed system, e.g., the version number.	

Activation Manager dialog box 22.3

Main window > System menu > Activation Manager... command Allows you to activate the current configuration or to rollback to a previous configuration.



Activate

Click to display the Activate Configuration dialog box.

22.4 Activate Configuration dialog box



Main window >

Allows you to type a description for the working copy of the configuration to be activated.

Set Delayed Activation time

Click to select a delayed activation time.

Force activation for all Operator Clients

If checked, each Operator Client workstation is automatically restarted to activate the new configuration. The user cannot refuse the new configuration.

If not checked, on each Operator Client workstation a dialog box appears for some seconds. The user can refuse or accept the new configuration. The dialog box is closed after a few

seconds without user interaction. In this case the new configuration is not accepted.

22.5 License Manager dialog box

Main window > Tools menu > License Manager... command

Allows you to license the Bosch VMS package that you have ordered and to upgrade with additional features.

Base Packages

Displays the available base packages.

Type Number

Displays the Commercial Type Number (CTN) of the selected package, feature or expansion.

Displays the licensing status if applicable.

Optional Features

Displays the available features.

Expansion

Displays the available expansions and their count. To change the count point right from a check box and click the up or down arrow.

Activate

Click to display the **License Activation** dialog box.

Import Bundle Info

Click to import an XML file containing a Bundle Information that you received from Bosch.

Add New Package

Click to display a dialog box for selecting a new license file.

22.6 **License Activation dialog box**

Main window > Tools menu > License Manager... command > License Manager dialog box > Activate button

Allows you to license the Bosch VMS packages that you have ordered and to upgrade with additional packages.

For obtaining the License Activation Key you must contact the Bosch Activation Center and specify the desired package and the computer signature of the Management Server.

Additionally you need the Authorization Number. This number is included in your software box.

License Activation Key:

Allows you to type the License Activation Key received from the Bosch Activation Center.

22.7 **Alarm Settings dialog box**

See Alarm Settings dialog box, page 225 for details.

22.8 Stream Quality Settings dialog box



Allows you to configure stream quality profiles that you can later assign to the recording modes.

A stream quality combines video resolution, frame rate, maximum bandwidth, and video compression.



Click to add a new stream quality.

Click to delete a selected stream quality. You cannot delete the default recording settings.

Name:

Displays the name of the stream quality. When you add a new stream quality, you can change the name.

SD video resolution:

Select the desired video resolution. For an HD quality you configure the SD quality of stream 2.

Image encoding interval:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

The system calculates the corresponding values for IPS (PAL and NTSC).

With the image encoding interval you configure the interval at which images are encoded and transmitted. If 1 is entered, all images are encoded. Entering 4 means that only every fourth image is encoded, the following three images are skipped - this can be particularly advantageous with low bandwidths. The lower the bandwidth the higher this value should be to achieve best-quality video.

Target bit rate [Kbps]:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

You can limit the data rate for the encoder to optimize usage of bandwidth in your network. The target data rate should be set according to the desired picture quality for typical scenes with no excessive motion.

For complex images or frequent changes of image content due to frequent movements, this limit can be temporarily exceeded up to the value you enter in the Maximum bit rate [Kbps]: field.

Maximum bit rate [Kbps]:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

With the maximum bit rate you configure the maximum transmission speed which cannot be exceeded.

You set a bit rate limit to be able to reliably determine the appropriate disk space for storage of the video data.

Depending on the video quality settings for the I- and P-Frames, this fact can result in individual images being skipped.

The value entered here must be at least 10% higher than the value entered in the Target bit rate [Kbps]: field. If the value entered here is too low, it will automatically be adjusted.

I-Frame Distance

This parameter allows you to set the intervals in which the I-Frames are coded. Click Automatic, to insert I-Frames as necessary. An entry of 1 indicates that I-Frames are continuously generated. An entry of 2 indicates that only every second image is an I-Frame, and 3 only every third image etc. The I-Frames in between are coded as P-Frames.

Frame Quality Level

Here you can set a value between 0 and 100 for both the I-Frames and the P-Frames. The lowest value results in the highest quality and the lowest frame refresh rate. The highest value results in the highest frame refresh rate and the lowest image quality.

The lower the available transmission bandwidth, the higher adjust the quality level to maintain high quality of the video.

Note:

You adjust the video quality dependent on the motion and level of detail in the video. If you check the Automatic check boxes, the optimum relationship between motion and image definition is automatically adjusted.

VIP X1600 XFM4 Settings

Allows you to configure the following H.264 settings for the VIP X 1600 XFM4 encoder module. H.264 deblocking filter: Select to improve visual quality and prediction performance by smoothing the sharp edges.

CABAC: Select to activate high efficient compression. Uses a large amount of processing power.

22.9 Options dialog box

Main window > Settings menu > Options... command

Language

Allows you to configure the language of your Configuration Client. If you select Default system language the language of your Windows installation is used.

Scan Options

Allows you to configure the scan process. Subnet allows that scanning is only active in the current subnet. Cross subnet allows for scanning beyond a router in other subnets. If the scan process does not find devices with one of these options, try the other one.

Analog Monitor Group (AMG) Settings

Allows you to configure that the users can control all analog monitor groups with each Bosch VMS client computer. It is then not required to configure this computer as a workstation in the Device Tree.

Logbook Configuration

Allows you to configure the connection string for the Logbook database. Change this string only when you want to configure a remote SQL server for the Logbook and only when you are familiar with SQL server technology.

Automatic Device Configuration

Enables that configurations of encoders and decoders are automatically aligned with the Bosch VMS configuration settings. You can check the configuration settings of a device on its property pages in the Device Tree.

22.10 Remote Access Settings dialog box

Main window > Settings menu > Remote Access Settings... command

Allows you to configure the port mapping for remote access.

You add one or more port ranges. Bosch VMS automatically assigns each private IP address of a configured device to a different public port number of one these ranges.

In the router that connects your private network with the public network, you configure the same port mapping. The router then forwards each packet with public port number from the public network to the private IP address and port number. Private IP address and port number have been configured in the port mapping table for this public port number.



Notice!

Additionally in the router you must manually configure the port forwarding according to the settings in the port mapping table.

Enable Port Mapping

Click to enable / disable port mapping.

Click to add a port range in the **Port ranges** list.

Click to change a selected entry in the Port ranges list.

Click to remove a selected entry in the **Port ranges** list.

Private IP address (for access within the LAN)

Select the private IP address of your Management Server local network adapter.

Public network address (for access from external, e.g. via Internet)

Type in the public network address of this private network. The remote Operator Client logs on with this public network address to get access to the devices of this Management Server.

Show Port Fowarding...

Click to display the **Port Mapping Table** dialog box.

Related Topics

Remote access, page 25

22.10.1 **Show Port Mapping dialog box**

Main window > Settings menu > Remote Access Settings... command > Show Port

Fowarding... button

Displays the port mapping for the IP addresses of the configured devices in your Bosch VMS.

Private IP

Displays the private network address of each configured device.

Private Port

Displays the private port number used in the private network for this device.

Allows you to change the value manually.

Public Port

Displays the public port number used by Operator Client from public networks to access this

Allows you to change the value manually.

Fixed

Click to check to fix the manually assigned port number.

Click to uncheck to enable the automatic assignment of a port number.

Copy to Clipboard

Click to copy the mapping table to the clipboard. This helps you in creating a configuration script for a port mapping in a router (for example a RRAS service).

Devices page 23



Main window > """

Displays the Device Tree and the configuration pages.

The count of items below an entry is displayed in square brackets.

Allows you to configure the available devices, such as mobile video services, ONVIF encoders, Bosch Video Streaming Gateway devices, encoders, decoders, VRMs, local storage encoders, analog matrices, or peripheral devices like ATM / POS bridges.

To add NVRs, decoders, and encoders to the system, click and The network is scanned for new devices. NVRs and decoders are automatically added to your system. Encoders must be manually assigned to NVRs, even if they are not recorded.

To add VRMs, iSCSI storage, encoders (live only, local storage, recorded), click VRM & iSCSI **Devices Scan.**

Unassigned encoders do not appear in the Device Tree. They are not part of your system until you assign them to a VRM or NVR.

Note:

Video data from encoders that are assigned to an NVR, is always encoded with MPEG-4. Devices are represented in a tree and grouped by the physical network structure and the device categories.

Video sources like encoders are grouped under VRMs. Digital video recorders such as DiBos are listed separately.



🔤 NVR & Decoder Scan

Click to display the NVR & Decoder Scan dialog box.

Scans the network for NVRs, decoders, and encoders. When the scan process is finished, a dialog box for assigning the detected encoders to NVRs is displayed.



Failover NVR Manager

Click to display the Failover NVR Manager dialog box.



IP Device Configuration

Click to display the IP Device Configuration dialog box.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by . Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click ...

Click a tree item to display the corresponding page.

23.1 Server List page



Main window >

Devices > Enterprise System > Server List

You can add multiple Management Server computers for simultaneous access in an Bosch VMS Enterprise System.

Add Server

Click to display the Add Server dialog box.

Delete Server

Click to remove the Management Server entries.

Management Server

Displays the names of all added Management Server computers. You can change each entry.

Private Network Address

Displays the private network addresses of all added Management Server computers. You can change each entry.

Public Network Address

Displays the public network addresses of all added Management Server computers. You can change each entry. You need the public network address for accessing this Management Server computer via remote access.

Server Number

Displays the logical numbers of all added Management Server computers. You can change each entry.

Server Description

Type in a description for this Management Server. You need this description to find it in the list of all available servers when you want to access the Management Server exclusively, for example to clarify an alarm coming from another management system.

Click to get a step-by-step instruction:

Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System, page 128

23.1.1 Add Server dialog box



Main window >

Devices > Enterprise System > Server List

Server Name:

Type in the display name of the Management Server.

Private Network Address:

Type in the private IP address or DNS name of the Management Server.

Public Network Address:

Type in the public network address or DNS name used for routed access.

Server Description:

Type in a description for the Management Server.

23.2 Initial Device Scan dialog box

Main window > Hardware menu > Initial Device Scan... command

Displays the devices which have duplicate IP addresses or a default IP address (192.168.0.1). Allows you to change such IP addresses and subnet masks.

You must enter the correct subnet mask before changing an IP address.

23.3 NVR & Decoder Scan dialog box



Displays detected encoders, NVRs, and decoders.

Allows you to assign detected encoders to an NVR. This is required to store the video data of the encoder on an NVR and to manage events of their assigned devices.

Unassigned devices do not appear in the Device Tree.



Notice!

Only devices in the local subnet are detected automatically. If a device is located in another subnet, add it manually to the Device Tree. To perform this, right-click the required node (for example an NVR), click **Add Encoder**, type the IP address of the device, click the **Network** tab and enter the subnet mask of the device.

Unassigned Encoders

Displays the unassigned encoders that were detected.

Assigned Encoders and NVRs

Displays assigned encoders and NVRs. NVRs are automatically assigned when they are detected. For assigning encoders you must drag them from the **Unassigned Encoders** list to an NVR.

Decoders

Displays the detected decoders.

Configure Devices

Click to display the IP Device Configuration dialog box.

Next >

Click to display the next page of this dialog box. If the device names differ from their names in Bosch VMS, a dialog box is displayed for changing the names as required.

Finish

Click to confirm the scan results and the assignments of encoders and close the dialog box.

23.4 Failover NVR Manager dialog box



Displays status information on your Failover NVRs.

23.5 IP Device Configuration dialog box



Displays the following properties of the available IP devices:

- Device name and type
- Connection type (BVIP or ONVIF)
- IP address
- Subnet mask
- System password
- Firmware version

Gateway IP address

Allows you to set the following properties of the available IP devices:

- Display name
- IP address
- Firmware version

You can configure display names, IP addresses and firmware versions for multiple devices at once.



Click to refresh the state information for all devices (not available on every page). You can refresh the state of a single device: Right-click the device and click **Refresh state**.

Note: When you have a large system with several 1000 devices configured, the process of refreshing states can take a long time.

Update Firmware

Click to update the firmware version of the selected device.

Show Passwords

Click to clear when you want the configured passwords being displayed in readable form.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by . Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click ...

Apply

Click to configure the devices with the entered values without closing the dialog box.

23.6 Set IP Addresses dialog box

Main window > Devices > IP Device Configuration dialog box > Right-click two or more entries > Click Set IP Addresses...

Allows you to set the IP addresses for multiple IP devices.

Start with:

Type the first IP address.

End with:

Displays the last IP address for the selected devices after having clicked Calculate.

Calculate

Click to calculate the range of IP addresses for the selected devices.

23.7 Set Display Names dialog box

Main window > Devices > IP Device Configuration dialog box > Right-click two or more entries > Click Set Display Names...

Allows you to set the display names for multiple IP devices.

Start with:

Type the first name.

End with:

Displays the last name for the selected devices after having clicked **Calculate**.

Calculate

Click to calculate the range of display names for the selected devices.

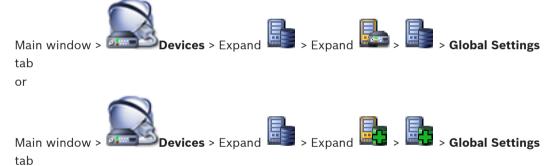
23.8 NVRs / Failover NVRs / Redundant NVRs page



Displays the property pages of a selected NVR, Failover NVR, or Redundant NVR.

• Click a tab to display the corresponding property page.

23.8.1 Global Settings page



Displays the following information:

- DNS name or IP address of the NVR.
 This name is used for display in the Device Tree. You can only change this name in the Windows settings of the computer serving as NVR.
- Several network related settings like MAC address or Default Gateway.

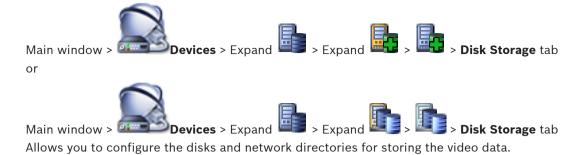
Allows you to configure a Failover NVR for the currently selected NVR.

Switch over to:

Select a Primary NVR to change its role to a Failover NVR.

23.8.2 Disk Storage page





Caution!

We recommend to store all video data on only one storage drive. Do not use multiple paths. Even if you must use more than 2 TB you can achieve such a large partition with appropriate formatting settings.

Add Network Path

Click to display a dialog box for selecting a network path.

Add Local Drive

Click to display a dialog box for selecting a local drive. This button is active only when a not configured local drive is available. You cannot select drive C:\ for storage.

Remove Storage

Click to display a dialog box for removing an added storage drive.

Use

Select a check box to select a drive for storage.

Drive

Displays the letter and the name of the drive.

Usage

Displays how much GB are used.

23.8.3 Camera Storage page



Allows you to configure the backup settings for video data for assigned cameras.

Name

Displays the camera name as configured on the Cameras and Recording page.

Location

Displays the location of the camera as configured on the Maps and Structure page.

Min Time [days]

Click a cell to edit the minimum number of days that video data from this camera is to be retained. Recordings younger than this number of days are not deleted automatically.

Max Time [days]

Click a cell to edit the maximum number of days that video data from this camera is to be retained. All recordings including protected recordings older than this number of days are deleted automatically.

Caution!

Select the maximum number of days according to the available disk space or enlarge the disk space. Ensure that maximum 85% of the available disk space is used.

Caution!

Recordings with a time stamp lying between minimum and maximum time except for protected recordings are automatically deleted when disk space is low.

Keep Protected Recordings

Select the check box to ensure that protected recordings are not deleted when their time stamp exceeds the maximum storage time. If this option was configured for a camera that has been removed from the Device Tree afterwards, all recordings including protected recordings of this camera are deleted after exceeding the maximum storage time.

Export on

Select the computer where videos are exported for backup. You can select the Management Server computer or this NVR computer. Exporting on the NVR is faster because exporting on the Management Server creates an additional network load.

Caution!

If you select the Primary NVR computer, video data that has been recorded on a Failover NVR during a downtime of the Primary NVR is not backed up.

Backup of video data uses as much network bandwidth as possible. Ensure that enough network performance is available.

Path

Select the path for the backup.

Schedule

Select the schedule for the backup.

Time [h]

Enter the number of hours into the past beginning with the scheduled time that you want to back up.

23.8.4 Assigned NVRs page



Displays the Primary NVRs in your system and their assignment to the selected Failover NVR. Allows you to assign or un-assign the available NVRs as required.

Remove NVR

Click to move the selected Primary NVRs to the **Time [h]** column.

Export on

Displays all Primary NVRs that are assigned to the selected Failover NVR.

Add NVF

Click to move the selected Primary NVRs to the **Export on** column.

Time [h]

Displays all Primary NVRs that are not assigned to the selected Failover NVR.

23.8.5 Assigned NVR page

Main window > Devices > Expand > Expand > Expand > Assigned NVR tab

Displays the Primary NVRs in your system and their assignment to the selected Redundant

NVR.

Allows you to assign or un-assign the available NVRs as required.

Click left to the Primary NVR name to configure this Primary NVR to be mirrored by the selected Redundant NVR.

Backup

Click to use the same camera storage settings as the Primary NVR. If you clear, the **Camera Storage** tab becomes active and you can configure specific camera storage settings for this Redundant NVR.

23.8.6 Add Network Path dialog box



Add Network Path button

Allows you to add a network path as storage location.

UNC path (e.g. \\VideoStorage2\NVR4)

Type a network path. Use the syntax required for UNC paths: \\<computer_name>\<directory>

Click to display a dialog box for selecting a network path.

Logon necessary

Select the check box if the network path is protected by a user ID.

User name

Type the required user name.

Password

Type the required password.

23.8.7 Add Local NVR Drive dialog box



Add Local Drive button

Allows you to add a local drive of the selected NVR as storage location. Select a check box to activate the corresponding drive.

Select All

Click to select all check boxes.

Clear All

Click to clear all check boxes.

23.9 Vidos NVRs page



Allows you to add and configure VIDOS NVRs.

You cannot configure VIDOS systems from within Bosch VMS.

Network Address:

Type the DNS name or the IP address of your VIDOS NVR.

User Name:

Type the user name for logging on to the VIDOS NVR.

Password:

Type the password for logging on to the VIDOS NVR.

23.10 DiBos page



Displays the property pages of a selected DiBos system. Allows you to integrate a DiBos system into your system.



Notice!

You do not configure the DiBos system itself but only the Bosch VMS related properties.

• Click a tab to display the corresponding property page.

23.10.1 Add DiBos System dialog box

Main window > Devices > Right-click > Add BRS/DiBos System command Allows you to add a DiBos system to your Bosch VMS.

Network Address:

Type the DNS name or the IP address of your DiBos system.

User name:

Type the user name for logging on to the DiBos system.

Password:

Type the password for logging on to the DiBos system.

23.10.2 Settings page



Displays the network settings of the DiBos system connected to your system. Allows you to change the settings if required.

23.10.3 Cameras page



Displays all cameras available on the DiBos system connected to your system. Allows you to remove cameras.

23.10.4 Inputs page



Displays all inputs available on the DiBos system connected to your system. Allows you to remove items.

23.10.5 Relays page



Displays all relays available on the DiBos system connected to your system.

Allows you to remove items.

23.11 DVR (Digital Video Recorder) page



Displays the property pages of a selected DVR.

Allows you to integrate a DVR into your system.

Click a tab to display the corresponding property page.



Notice!

You do not configure the DVR itself but only the integration of the DVR device into Bosch VMS.

Click below to get detailed information on the available pages:

- Settings tab, page 151
- Cameras tab, page 152
- Inputs tab, page 152
- Relays tab, page 152

Click below to get step-by-step instructions:

- Adding devices, page 81
- Configuring the integration of a DVR, page 85

23.11.1 Add DVR dialog box



Network Address:

Type the DNS name or the IP address of your DVR.

User name

Type the user name for connecting to the DVR.

Password:

Type the password for connecting to the DVR.

Click below to get step-by-step instructions:

Adding devices, page 81

23.11.2 Settings tab

Main window > **Devices** > • • > **Settings** tab

Displays the network settings of the DVR connected to your system. Allows you to change the settings if required.

23.11.3 Cameras tab

Main window > **Devices** > \$\overline{\overline

Displays all video channels of the DVR as cameras. Allows you to remove cameras.

23.11.4 Inputs tab

Main window > **Devices** > \$\frac{1}{40}\$ > \$\lambda\$ = Inputs tab

Displays all inputs of the DVR.

Allows you to remove items.

23.11.5 Relays tab

Main window > **Devices** > • • > **Relays** tab

Displays all relays of the DVR. Allows you to remove items.

23.12 Matrix Switches page



Displays the property pages of the Bosch Allegiant device.

You do not configure the Bosch Allegiant device itself but only the Bosch VMS related properties. For connecting an Allegiant device with Bosch VMS, see the **Concepts** chapter in this Online Help. This chapter provides background information on selected issues.

You can additionally configure control priorities for Allegiant trunk lines.

• Click a tab to display the corresponding property page.

23.12.1 Connection page



Displays the name of the Bosch Allegiant configuration file.

Bosch VMS can read out a configuration file in structured storage format with the names and configuration information of all cameras connected to the Bosch Allegiant device.

Update Configuration

Click to select an updated Bosch Allegiant configuration file.

23.12.2 Cameras page



Displays a camera table of the cameras that are connected to the Bosch Allegiant device.

No

Displays the consecutive number of the camera.

Logical Number

Displays the logical number of the camera.

Camera Name

Displays the name of the camera.

23.12.3 Outputs page



Allows you to configure the usage of a Bosch Allegiant device output and to assign an encoder to an output.

To store the video data of a Bosch Allegiant device output in Bosch VMS, you must assign an encoder to the output. This encoder must be connected to the output.

No.

Displays the number of the output.

Allegiant Logical No.

Displays the logical number of the output within Allegiant.

Bosch VMS Logical No.

Allows you to change the logical number of the output within Bosch VMS. If you enter an already used number, a message is displayed.

Name

Displays the name of the output.

Usage

Allows you to change the usage of the output.

If you select **Digital Trunk**, you can assign an encoder to this output in the **Encoder** field. The Allegiant output becomes network-compatible.

If you select **Allegiant Monitor**, in the Operator Client the user can assign the camera signal to a hardware monitor. PTZ control is possible if the camera is configured as PTZ camera. In the Operator Client, the user cannot drag this camera on an Image pane.

If you select **Unused**, the user cannot assign a monitor to an Allegiant camera.

Encoder

Allows you to assign an output to an encoder. You can only select an encoder when you have checked **Digital Trunk**. The encoder is locked for the Logical Tree. If you assign an encoder that is already in the Logical Tree, it is removed from there. In the Operator Client, the user can drag the camera to an Image pane.

23.12.4 Inputs page



Allows you to add inputs to a Bosch Allegiant device.

Add Input

Click to add a new row in the table for specifying a new input.

Delete Input

Click to remove a row from the table.

Input No.

Type the required number of the input. If you enter an already used number, a message is displayed.

Input Name

Type the required name of the input.

23.13 Workstation page



Allows you to configure the following settings for a workstation:

- Add a CCTV keyboard connected to a Bosch Video Management System workstation.
- Assign a Command Script that is executed on startup of the workstation.
- Select the data stream for live display.
- Enable Forensic Search.
- Assign analog monitor groups to a workstation.

A workstation must have the Operator Client software installed.



To add a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard that is connected to a decoder, expand



23.13.1 Settings page



Allows you to configure a script that is executed when the Operator Client on the workstation is started.

Allows you to configure which stream of an IP device is used for live display.

Allows you to enable Forensic Search for this workstation.

And you can configure the keyboard that is connected to this workstation.

Network address:

Type the DNS name or the IP address of your workstation.

Startup script:

Select the desired script that you want to be started when the workstation's Operator Client is started. You create or import such a script on the **Events** page.

Override recording settings

Select the check box to enable selecting the desired stream for live view. The other one is used for continuous, motion, and alarm recording for this workstation.

See dual streaming in the glossary.

Enable Forensic Search

Click to enable Forensic Search for this workstation.

Use direct playback from storage

Select the check box to send the video stream directly from the storage device to this workstation. Now the stream is not sent via VRM. The workstation still needs connection to the VRM to ensure correct playback.

Retrieve Live video from Streaming Gateway instead of camera

Displays the list of Video Streaming Gateway devices. Select the desired entries to enable the transmission of video data via low bandwidth segments between the video source and this workstation.

Keyboard type:

Select the type of the keyboard that is connected to your workstation.

Port:

Select the COM port that is used to connect your keyboard.

Baudrate:

Select the maximum rate, in bits per second (bps), that you want data to be transmitted through this port. Usually, this is set to the maximum rate supported by the computer or device you are communicating with.

Data bits:

Displays the number of data bits you want to use for each character that is transmitted and received.

Stop bits:

Displays the time between each character being transmitted (where time is measured in bits).

Displays the type of error checking you want to use for the selected port.

Port type:

Displays the connection type that is used to connect the Bosch IntuiKey keyboard with the workstation.

Assigned Analog Monitor Groups page 23.13.2



Allows you to assign an analog monitor group to this workstation. Beforehand you must have

added an analog monitor group in



Assigned Analog Monitor Groups

Select the check box to assign the analog monitor group to this workstation. In the Options dialog box, you can configure that all other workstations can also control analog monitor groups.

Analog Monitor Group

Displays the name of each analog monitor group.

23.14 Decoders page

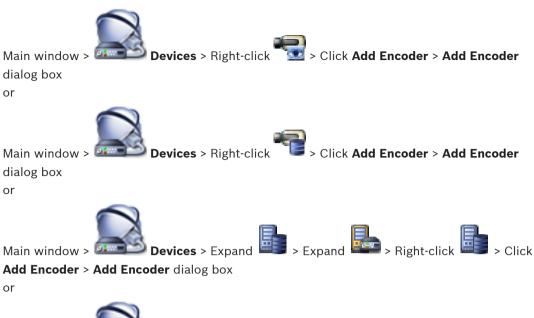


See Encoders / Decoders page, page 183 for details.

23.14.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box







> Right-click Main window > 🍱 **Devices** > Expand

Add Decoder dialog box

Allows you to add an encoder or decoder manually. This is especially useful when you want to add any BVIP encoder (not for NVR).

IP address:

Type in a valid IP address.

Encoder type:

For a device with known device type, select the appropriate entry. It is not necessary that the device is available in the network.

If you want to add any BVIP encoder, select <Auto Detect>. The device must be available in the network.

Related Topics

Adding devices, page 81

23.14.2 Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box

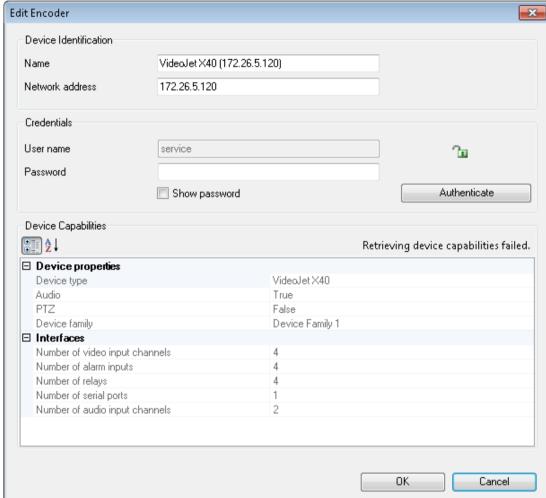


> Click Edit Encoder > Edit Encoder **Devices** > Right-click dialog box

or



Edit Encoder



Allows you to check and update the device capabilities of a device. On opening this dialog box the device is connected. The password is checked and the device capabilities of this device are compared with the device capabilities stored in Bosch VMS.

Displays the device name. When you add a BVIP encoder, the device name is generated. If required change the entry.

Network address

Type in the network address of the device.

User name

Displays the user name used for authenticating at the device.

Password

Type in the valid password for authenticating at the device.

Show password

Click to enable that the entered password is displayed. Be careful that nobody can spy out this password.

Authenticate

Click to authenticate at the device with the credentials entered above.

Device Capabilities

You can sort the displayed device capabilities per category or alphabetically.



A message text informs you whether the detected device capabilities match the current device capabilities. Click to apply the changes of the device capabilities after an upgrade of the device.

Related Topics

Updating the device capabilities, page 69

23.15 Analog Monitor Groups page



Allows you to add and configure analog monitor groups. You assign an analog monitor group to



Caution!

You cannot control an analog monitor group from within Operator Client when the connection to the Management Server is lost or when Operator Client with Enterprise System is used.

23.15.1 Settings page



Allows you to perform the following tasks:

- Configure an analog monitor group
- Assign decoders to an analog monitor group
- Enable quad view for decoders that support quad view

Name:

Type the name of the analog monitor group.

Columns:

Enter the number of columns for the analog monitor group. The result is displayed.

Enter the number of rows for the analog monitor group. The result is displayed.

Unassigned Decoder Channels

Drag a decoder to an available analog monitor.

Monitor image

The white number, if present, displays the logical number of the initial camera. The black number displays the logical number of the decoder.

Right-click an analog monitor image to toggle between single view and quad view. On the Advanced Configuration page, the Quad View column displays the corresponding setting. To un-assign a decoder, right-click the analog monitor image and click **Clear Monitor**.

23.15.2 **Advanced Configuration page**

Devices > Expand > Advanced Configuration tab Main window >

- Allows you to perform the following tasks:
- Enable quad view for decoders that support quad view

Configure the logical number of a decoder or decoder channel.

- Configure the OSD.



Notice!

We do not recommend configuring quad view for H.264 cameras.

Note the following hints on switching the decoder between quad view and single view in the Operator Client:

- The user can manually switch the decoder back to single view when it is configured as quad view.
- When the decoder is switched to single view or to quad view and a sequence is just running, only the last video stream remains visible.
- When the user switches to quad view, the last cameras that have been displayed on Image pane 2-4 are reconnected.
- This is also valid for trunk lines. There is only one limitation: If the matrix camera cannot be reconnected, this is ignored without an error message. A black Image pane is visible.
- When switching to single view, all trunk lines that are displayed on Image pane 2-4 are disconnected. Only the camera number is stored for a later switch to quad view.

Decoder Name

Displays the display name of the decoder.

Network Address

Displays the IP address of the decoder.

Logical Number

Enter the logical number of the decoder. If you enter an already used number, a message is displayed.

Quad

Displays the position of the decoder on the quad view. 1 is left upper corner, 4 is right lower

Quad View

Select the check box to enable quad view for this decoder. On the Settings page, the corresponding analog monitor image displays the quad view. Logical numbers are created automatically. If you want the Operator Client user to be able to switch between quad view and single view, then check Quad View. If you clear Quad View, the Operator Client user cannot switch.

AMG

Displays the analog monitor group that the decoder in this row is assigned to.

Initial Camera

Click to select the camera that is displayed initially on the monitor after having started the Operator Client. The logical number of the initial camera is displayed as the white number on the monitor image in the Settings page.

OSD Camera Name

Check to display the camera name as OSD.

OSD Camera No.

Check to display the logical number of the camera as OSD.

OSD Position

To set the location of an OSD, select the desired entry.

23.16 Monitor Wall page



Allows you to add a monitor wall application. This application allows for controlling the monitor wall hardware from within Operator Client. No server is involved in controlling the monitor wall. This ensures that the user of Operator Client is always able to control the monitor wall even if the Management Server is offline.

See also

Adding a monitor wall, page 88

23.16.1 Add Monitor Wall dialog box



Decoder:

Select the decoder that is connected to the monitor wall.

Max. number of monitors:

Type in the number of used decoder channels if you do not want to use all available channels. If you leave the field empty, the maximum number of channels that is supported by the decoder, is displayed in Operator Client.

Enable thumbnails

Click to check if you want to display a snapshot in Operator Client for each monitor. This snapshot is regularly updated.

See also

Adding a monitor wall, page 88

23.17 **Communication Devices page**



Allows you to add or configure a communication device. You can configure the following communication devices:

- SMS (GSM or SMSC dial-up provider)

23.17.1 E-mail/SMTP Server dialog box



Device command

Allows you to add an e-mail server to your Bosch VMS.

Name:

Type the display name of the e-mail server.

23.17.2 Add SMS Device dialog box



Allows you to add an SMS device to your system.

Name:

Type the name of the SMS server that is used for being displayed.

GSM modem

Click to add a GSM modem.

SMSC dial up

Click to add a Hayes compatible modem which can connect to an SMSC provider.

23.17.3 SMTP Server page



Allows you to configure the e-mail settings of your system. On the **Events** page, you can assign an event to an e-mail. When this event occurs, the systems sends an e-mail. You cannot receive e-mails in Bosch VMS.

SMTP Server Name:

Type the name of the e-mail server. You get the information about the required entry from your provider. Usually this is the IP address or DNS name of your e-mail server.

Port:

Type the required network port number for outgoing mails. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Connection time-out [s]:

Type the number of seconds of inactivity until the connection is disconnected.

Authentification:

Select a check box for the required authentication method. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Username:

Type the user name for authenticating at the e-mail server. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Password:

Type the password for authenticating at the e-mail server. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Send Test E-mail

Click to display the **Send Test E-mail** dialog box.

23.17.4 Send Test E-mail dialog box



Allows you to send a test e-mail.

From:

button

Type the e-mail address of the sender.

To:

Type the e-mail address of the recipient.

Subject:

Type the subject of the e-mail.

Message:

Type the message.

Send Test E-mail

Click to send the e-Mail.

23.17.5 GSM Settings / SMSC Settings page



Allows you to configure the SMS settings of your Bosch VMS. On the **Events** page, you can assign an event to a short message. When this event occurs, the system sends a short message. If the number of entered characters exceeds the highest permitted number (usually 160), an SMS is divided into multiple parts.

Device:

Select the required COM port where the external modem is connected to. If your computer has an internal modem, select the corresponding entry.

Speed:

Select the required transfer rate.

Pin: (for GSM device only)

Type the personal identification number for authenticating at the device.

Data format: (for SMSC device only)

Select the required data format. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Unicode (for GSM device only)

Select the check box to enable unicode characters. This reduces the highest number of permitted characters to 80.

Dial string: (for SMSC device only)

Type the number to connect to the SMSC dial-up provider. You get this number from your provider.

Password: (for SMSC device only)

Type the password that the device needs to connect to the SMSC dial-up provider if required. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Protocol: (for SMSC device only)

Select the required protocol that the device uses to connect to the SMSC dial-up provider. You get the information about the required entry from your provider.

Recipient:

Type the mobile phone number of the recipient of the short messages. Include the country prefix without + sign (e.g. 0049170123456).

Message (max. 160 chars):

Type the text for the short message.

SMS Test Message

Click to send a test short message.

23.18 **POS + ATM page**



Allows you to add and configure peripheral devices, for example, a Bosch ATM/POS Bridge. If you want to add multiple bridges at one server, you must use different ports.

23.18.1 Add Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge dialog box



Bridge command

Allows you to add a Bosch ATM/POS Bridge.

Name:

Type an appropriate name for the device.

IP address:

Type the IP address of the device.

Port 1:

Type the appropriate port number used for transmitting the keep alive signal (every 5 seconds).

Port 2:

Type the appropriate port number used for transmitting messages from the device.

23.18.2 Bosch ATM/POS-Bridge page



Bridge tab

Allows you to configure a Bosch ATM/POS Bridge.

IP address:

Type the IP address of the device.

Port 1

Type the appropriate port number used for transmitting the keep alive signal (every 5 seconds).

Port 2:

Type the appropriate port number used for transmitting messages from the device.

23.18.3 Inputs page



Allows you to configure an ATM device.

23.18.4 ATM Settings page



Allows you to configure an ATM device.

Serial Port:

In the list, select the appropriate port.

Inputs

Select a check box to enable the corresponding input.

23.19 Virtual Inputs page



Displays the virtual inputs configured in your system.

Allows you to add new virtual inputs and to delete existing ones.

Add Inputs

Click to display a dialog box for adding new virtual inputs.

Delete Inputs

Click to delete a selected virtual input.

Number

Displays the number of the virtual input.

Namo

Click a cell to modify the name of the virtual input.

23.19.1 Add Virtual Inputs dialog box



Allows you to add new virtual inputs.

Start:

Select the first number of the new virtual inputs.

End:

Select the last number of the new virtual inputs.

Name:

Type in the name of each new virtual input. A consecutive number is appended.

Δdd

Click to add the new virtual inputs.

23.20 SNMP page



Allows you to add or configure an SNMP measurement for maintaining the network quality.

23.20.1 Add SNMP dialog box

Main window > Devices > Expand > Right-click > Add SNMP command Allows you to add a network monitoring system to your Bosch VMS.

Name:

Type a name for the network monitoring device.

23.20.2 SNMP Trap Receiver page



Allows you to select devices for monitoring and to select SNMPtrapOIDs that trigger an event for the selected device when they are received.



Notice!

You must enter the IP address of the Bosch Video Management System Management Server as the trap receiver in your devices that you want to monitor.

SNMP Trap Sending Devices:

Allows you to enter a range of IP addresses of the monitored network devices. To monitor a single device enter the corresponding IP address in the **Range From** cell.

Be careful when changing these addresses. Entering a wrong address stops network monitoring of this device.

SNMP Trap Filter Rules:

Allows you to enter OIDs and corresponding values. You can use wildcards as * and ? to enhance the filter range. If you enter OIDs and values in more than one row, these filter rules must match simultaneously to trigger an event. In both columns, you can enter a regular expression in {}. If there are characters outside the brackets, the regular expression is not evaluated.

Show Trap Logger Tool

Click to display the **SNMP Trap Logger** dialog box for tracing SNMP trap OIDs.

23.20.3 SNMP Trap Logger dialog box



Trap Receiver > Click **Show Trap Logger Tool**

Allows you to trace SNMPtrapOIDs. You can receive traps from all devices in your network or only from selected ones. You can filter the traps to be received and you can add OIDs and values of selected traps to the **SNMP Trap Filter Rules:** table.

Start/Pause

Click to start or stop a tracing process.

Only Traps From Sender

Enter the IP address or DNS name of a device. Only traps from this device are traced.

Only Traps Containing

Enter a string a trap can contain. You can use * and ? as wildcards. Strings in {} are treated as regular expressions. Only traps containing such a string are traced.

Received Traps

Displays the traps that are received by a tracing process.



Click to remove all entries in the **Received Traps** field.

Displays the trap details. You can copy the OID and the Value entry to the SNMP Trap Filter Rules: table.

23.21 Assign Keyboard page



Allows you to add a VideoTec DCZ keyboard (connected to a Bosch VMS workstation) or a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard (connected to a Bosch VMS workstation or to a decoder).

Add Keyboard

Click to add a row to the table for configuring a keyboard.

Delete Keyboard

Click to remove the selected row.

Keyboard Type

Displays the type of the keyboard that is connected to your workstation or decoder. Click a cell to select the required keyboard type.

IntuiKey Keyboard

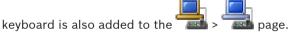
Select this type if you have attached an IntuiKey keyboard from Bosch.

VideoTec DCZ

Select this type if you have attached a VideoTec DCZ keyboard.

Connection

In a cell, select the device your keyboard is connected to. If you select a workstation, the



Port

In a cell, select the desired COM port.

Baudrate

In a cell, select the maximum rate, in bits per second (bps), that you want data to be transmitted through this port. Usually, this is set to the maximum rate supported by the computer or device you are communicating with.

Data bits

Displays the number of data bits you want to use for each character that is transmitted and received.

Stop bits

Displays the time between each character being transmitted (where time is measured in bits).

Displays the type of error checking you want to use for the selected port.

Port type

Displays the connection type that is used to connect the Bosch IntuiKey keyboard with the workstation.

23.22 I/O Modules page



Allows you to add or configure an I/O module. Currently only ADAM devices are supported.

23.22.1 ADAM page



Displays information on the selected ADAM device.

Allows you to change the display name of an ADAM device.

ADAM type:

Select the appropriate device type.

Inputs total:

Displays the total number of inputs available with this device type.

Relays/Outputs total:

Displays the total number of relays available with this device type.

23.22.2 Inputs page



Displays the logical number of the input.

Name

Click a cell to change the display name of an input.

23.22.3 Relays page



Number

Click a cell to change the logical number of a relay.

Name

Type the display name of the relay.

23.23 Allegiant CCL Emulation page



Allows you to activate the Bosch AllegiantCCL emulation. This emulation starts an internal Bosch VMS service that translates CCL commands of the Matrix Switch into Bosch VMS. You configure a COM port of the Management Server to listen to these CCL commands. The CCL

emulation helps to exchange existing Allegiant devices with Bosch Video Management System or to use Bosch Video Management System with applications that support the Allegiant CCL commands.

Allegiant CCL commands supported in Bosch VMS lists the CCL commands supported in Bosch Video Management System.

Note:

Do not configure the Allegiant CCL emulation and an Allegiant device to the same COM port. If for both devices the same COM port is configured, the Allegiant device wins. The access of the Allegiant CCL emulation device fails with an appropriate message.

To solve this, the Management Server must have two different COM ports or connect the Allegiant device to another computer.

Enable Allegiant CCL Emulation

Select the check box to enable the emulation.

Baud rate

Select the value for the transmission rate in bit/s.

Stop bits

Select the number of stop bits per character.

Parity check

Select the type of parity check.

Interface mode

Select the desired protocol for the serial interface.

Half-duplex mode

Select the setting appropriate for your application.

23.24 Mobile Video Service page





Allows you to add one or more transcoding service entries to your Bosch VMS. This transcoding service adapts the video stream from a camera configured in Bosch VMS to the available network bandwidth. This enables mobile video clients like an iPhone, iPad or Web Client to receive live or playback video data via unreliable network connections with limited bandwidth.

See also

Adding a Mobile Video Service, page 90

Add Mobile Video Service dialog box 23.24.1



Devices > Right-click



> Click Add Mobile Video Service

URI

Type in the URI of your Mobile Video Service. Follow the syntax rules of the example:

https://www.MyDomain.org/mvs

You must start the entry always with https://, even when you did not configure an encrypted access to your Web server.

See also

Adding a Mobile Video Service, page 90

23.25 VRM Devices page



Allows you to add and configure VRM devices. A VRM device needs at least an encoder, an iSCSI device, and a LUN assigned to the iSCSI device, and a storage pool. See the Release Notes and the data sheet for current firmware versions.

Caution!

After you have added an iSCSI device with respective encoders to your Bosch VMS, you must add the IQN of each encoder to this iSCSI device (valid for some iSCSI device types). See *Configuring an iSCSI device*, page 64 for details.

Caution!

Ensure that the time of the VRM computer is synchronized with the Management Server. Otherwise you can loose recordings.

Configure the time server software on the Management Server. On the VRM computer, configure the IP address of the Management Server as time server using standard Windows procedures.

23.26 VRM Settings page



VRM Server name

Type a name that is displayed in the device tree of Bosch Video Client.

Server initiator name

Displays the iSCSI initiator name of VRM Server.

System-wide CHAP password

Enter the password that you have configured in the iSCSI storage device. The CHAP password is valid for the VRM and is sent to all devices automatically. Replay clients do not need additional configuration. You must configure the iSCSI systems manually with the CHAP password. If you are using a CHAP password, all storage systems have to be configured to use the CHAP password. Only one system wide CHAP password is supported by the VRM system.

Use as failover server / Master server IP address / Password

You can set up a computer as the master server, provided that VRM Server is started on it, and set up another computer as a failover server. The configuration settings of the master server are then synchronized on the failover server. If the master server fails, the failover server automatically takes over the management of the VRM system.

Check Now

Click to reassign the devices of all storage pools to their iSCSI storage systems. This is only being performed on storage pools with **Automatic** recording mode.

23.26.1 SNMP page



1. SNMP host address 2. SNMP host address

VRM supports the SNMP V2 (Simple Network Management Protocol) for managing and monitoring network components, and can send SNMP messages (traps) to IP addresses. The unit supports SNMP MIB II in the unified code. If you wish to send SNMP traps, enter the IP addresses of one or two required target units here.

Some events are sent as SNMP traps only. Refer to the MIB file for descriptions.

23.26.2 Advanced page



Activate the different logs for VRM Server and Configuration Manager, and specify the retention time for log files in days. We recommend that you configure a logging retention time not less than the longest minimum retention time of the cameras.

The log files for VRM Server are stored on the computer on which VRM Server has been started, and can be viewed or downloaded with VRM Monitor.

The log files for Configuration Manager are stored locally in the following directory: C:\Documents and Settings\<User>\My Documents\Bosch\Video Recording Manager\Log

Complete memory dump file

Only activate this option if necessary, for example if the Technical Customer Service team requests a complete summary of the main memory.

Telnet support

Activate this option if access with the Telnet protocol is to be supported. Only activate if necessary.

Caution!

Extensive logging requires considerable CPU power and HDD capacity.

Do not use extensive logging in continuous operation.

23.27 Pool page



Allows you to configure recording settings valid for all devices that are collected in this storage pool.

Recording preferences mode

Failover

Recordings are saved only to primary target. If it is not possible to save to this target, the recording will be saved to the target entered under secondary target.

A failure situation is reached if the primary target does not provide storage blocks due to whatever reason: system down, network error, no capacity left.

You can leave the second list empty. In this case no failover is possible but the number of required iSCSI sessions is reduced and no disk space on secondary target is allocated. This reduces system overhead and extends the system retention time.

Automatic

Load balancing is configured automatically. Each encoder is automatically assigned 2 iSCSI targets and blocks on these 2 iSCSI targets are assigned to the encoder.

Sanity check period (days)

Move the slider to configure the required time period. After this time period the iSCSI target is checked and blocks are reassigned if needed.

Secondary target usage

Enable or disable the use of a secondary target.

Block reservation for downtime

Enter the number of days that the assigned encoders will be recorded although the VRM Server is down.

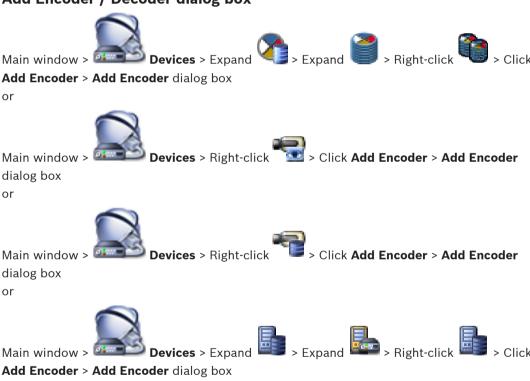
For example, if you set 4, the encoders will be recorded during approximately 4 days of VRM Server downtime.

If your system has encoders with low bit rate, you can significantly reduce the pre-allocated disk space. This ensures a proper distribution of storage capacity and extends the retention

Further information

iSCSI storage pool

23.27.1 Add Encoder / Decoder dialog box



Add Decoder dialog box

Main window > 244

Allows you to add an encoder or decoder manually. This is especially useful when you want to add any BVIP encoder (not for NVR).

🍮 > Right-click

IP address:

or

Type in a valid IP address.

Devices > Expand

Encoder type:

For a device with known device type, select the appropriate entry. It is not necessary that the device is available in the network.

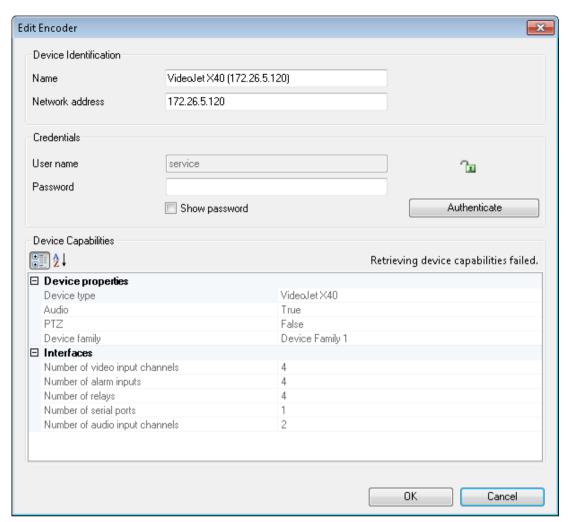
If you want to add any BVIP encoder, select <Auto Detect>. The device must be available in the network.

Related Topics

Adding devices, page 81

23.27.2 **Edit Encoder / Decoder dialog box**





Allows you to check and update the device capabilities of a device. On opening this dialog box the device is connected. The password is checked and the device capabilities of this device are compared with the device capabilities stored in Bosch VMS.

Name

Displays the device name. When you add a BVIP encoder, the device name is generated. If required change the entry.

Network address

Type in the network address of the device.

User name

Displays the user name used for authenticating at the device.

Password

Type in the valid password for authenticating at the device.

Show password

Click to enable that the entered password is displayed. Be careful that nobody can spy out this password.

Authenticate

Click to authenticate at the device with the credentials entered above.

Device Capabilities

You can sort the displayed device capabilities per category or alphabetically.



A message text informs you whether the detected device capabilities match the current device capabilities. Click to apply the changes of the device capabilities after an upgrade of the device.

Related Topics

- Updating the device capabilities, page 69

23.27.3 Change Pool for dialog box

Main window > Devices > Expand > Expand > Right-click > Change

Pool ... command > Change Pool for dialog box

or

Main window > **Devices** > Expand > Expand > or

Main window > **Devices** > Expand > Expand > = > = > = =

Allows you to change the pool assignment of a device.

Current Pool:

Displays the number of the pool which the selected device is currently assigned to.

New Pool:

Select the desired pool number.

Related Topics

- Moving an encoder to another pool, page 68
- Moving an iSCSI system to another pool, page 65
- Moving a VSG to another pool, page 72

23.27.4 Add iSCSI Device dialog box



Device > Add iSCSI Device dialog box

Allows you to add an iSCSI devices to a VRM.

Name

Type in a display name for the device.

Network Address

Type in a valid network address of the device.

iSCSI Device Type

Select the appropriate device type.

Password

Type in the password for authenticating at the device.

Related Topics

Adding a VRM device with iSCSI device, page 62

23.27.5 Add DSA E-Series Device dialog box



Allows you to add a DSA E-Series iSCSI device. This device type has a management IP address different from the IP address of the iSCSI storage. Via this management IP address the device is automatically detected and configured.

Name:

Type in a display name for the device.

Management address:

Type in the IP address for automatic configuration of the device.

Password:

Type the password of this device.

DSA E-Series type:

Displays the device type.

Network address iSCSI port:

Displays the IP address of the iSCSI port of the device. If available you can select another IP address.

Management address:

Displays the IP address for automatic configuration of the second controller if available. If available you can select another IP address.

Network address iSCSI port:

Displays the IP address of the iSCSI port of the second controller if available. If available you can select another IP address.

Connect

Click to detect the settings of the device.

If connection is established, the fields in the Controller group and the 2nd Controller group are filled.

Related Topics

Adding a DSA E-Series iSCSI device, page 63

23.27.6 **Basic Configuration page**











> Basic Configuration tab

Allows you to perform a basic configuration of your iSCSI device. You create LUNs on the iSCSI hard drive and format these LUNs.

Only displayed if the device is one of the iSCSI storage systems supported by Bosch, for example DSA or DLS 1x00.

The displayed options can differ depending on the used type of iSCSI storage system.



Notice!

After the basic configuration of an E-Series the system needs many hours (or even days) to initialize. In this phase the full performance is not available and in phase 1.5 formatting can fail.

Physical capacity [GB]

Information on the total capacity of the storage system.

Number of LUNs

You can change the number of LUNs.

Caution!



If you change the number of LUNs, the entire iSCSI system is reorganized and any sequences saved on the system are lost.

Therefore, before making changes, check the recordings and back up any important sequences.

Capacity for new LUNs [GB]

This option is only displayed for E-Series.

As 256 is the maximum number of LUNs of a storage array, the LUN size should not be set to a too small value (otherwise no more LUNs can be created in the future, if an additional shelf is installed).

Target spare disks

Number of spare disks the user wants the system to have.

Actual spare disks

Number of spare disks which are currently in the system. This number can differ from the number above, e.g. if the storage system is reconfigured manually or if disks are broken.

Initialization status (%)

Additional information is displayed during initialization. When initialization is complete (100%), you will also have the opportunity to delete all LUNs again.

Note: On FAS storage systems, it can take several hours before LUNs are fully deleted. During that time, the total capacity of newly created LUNs can be reduced. You can only create new LUNs with full capacity after the old LUNs have been completely deleted.

RAID-DP (reliability focused)

Activate this option if you do not wish to use the specified RAID type RAID-4, but would prefer to use the more reliable RAID type RAID DP.

RAID 6 (reliability focused)

Activate this option if you do not wish to use the specified RAID type RAID-5, but would prefer to use the more reliable RAID type RAID 6.

Clears the configuration, i.e. deleting all LUNs.

Defaults

Sets the storage system back to its factory default. Additionally to clear the storage system name and all iSCSI IP addresses are deleted. Only management addresses and the configuration password are retained.

Serial number

The serial number needed for support cases. It is only correct if the controller is not moved to a different shelf.

Delete all LUNs

As already stated above the user should wait some hours before he creates new LUNs.

Additional information

Additional information is displayed here, for example information that the storage system is not configured correctly and that therefore no setup is possible.

23.27.7 Load Balancing page



Prerequisite: Configure the **Automatic** recording mode.

Set the upper limits for the permitted bit rate and the number of simultaneous iSCSI connections for each iSCSI system. If these limits are exceeded, data is no longer being written to the iSCSI system and is lost.

For supported systems (for example Bosch RAID, NetApp, DLA), use the default values. For another device see the documentation of this device. Start testing with small values.

Hard limit

These values represent a security margin in relation to the soft limit values. If the write accesses are in this range, internal allocation of addressed blocks must be reorganized. This does not affect the current recording.

If this value is also exceeded, the recording is interrupted for a few seconds and the internal allocation of addressed blocks is reorganized.

If the system as a whole does not provide sufficient bandwidth or iSCSI connections for the allocated devices, this can result in recordings being impossible on a regular basis. If this is the case, increase the available overall bandwidth and/or the number of possible iSCSI connections by adding further storage systems, or reduce the number of cameras recording on the iSCSI system.

23.27.8 ign-Mapper dialog box



Allows you to start the IQN mapping process.

23.27.9 LUNs page



Allows you to add, remove, or format LUNs.

Click to display the Add LUN dialog box.

Remove

Click to remove the selected LUNs. A message box is displayed.

Format LUN

Click to format the selected LUN. A message box is displayed.

Note:

In the Format column, click the check box for the desired LUN.

23.27.10 Add LUN dialog box



Allows you to add a LUN.

ld

Enter the ID of the desired LUN.

23.28 Video Streaming Gateway device page



See also

Adding a Video Streaming Gateway device, page 72

23.29 Assignment tab (Video Streaming Gateway)



Assignment tab

Allows you to assign cameras to the selected VSG device and to configure the VSG cameras.

Network scan

In the list, select the camera type that you want to display.



Click to assign or de-assign selected cameras to or from VSG.

Note: When you select multiple cameras in the Network scan list, select only cameras of the

same type, for example only Bosch cameras or only ONVIF cameras. Otherwise the button is disabled.

Refresh

Click to update the list of scanned cameras.

VSG cameras

Displays the cameras that are assigned to a Video Streaming Gateway device and the lines that are available for assigning a camera.

Add...

Click to display the **Add/Edit** dialog box for assigning a camera to your Video Streaming Gateway device. Allows you to configure properties like IP address or protocol settings.

Note: When you add multiple ONVIF cameras in the **Network scan** list, in the **Token** list only the common tokens are displayed.

Edit... (only available if you select an entry in the VSG cameras list)

Click to display a dialog box for editing the properties of a VSG camera.

See also

Adding a Bosch camera to a VSG, page 73

Add/Edit dialog box (Video Streaming Gateway) 23.30



URL

In the list, select the IP address or the URL of the desired VSG device.

Bosch device: IP address or DNS name

ONVIF: URL (starts with http)

User name

Type in the user name for logon to the device, usually service.

Password

Type in the password for logon to the device.

Connect

Click to connect to the device and to assign it to VSG.

When logon is successful, configure the protocol settings if required.

Skip

Click to activate the configuration settings in the **Protocol settings** group.

This button does not appear, if you configure a camera that was detected by network scan and

. The button appears, if you select a line in the VSG cameras list and click the Add... or the Edit... button.

Protocol settings

Make the desired protocol settings. Note that the available configuration settings change with the selected entry in the **Type** list.

Type

Note: The available configuration settings change with the selected entry.

Entry in the Type list	Available configuration settings
Bosch RCP+	Video input
	Select the number of the desired camera if you configure a multichannel device.
	Stream
	Select the number of the stream of the selected camera.
	Protocol
	TCP
	Used for transmission in the Internet and / or for lossless
	data transmission. Ensures that no data packet gets lost.
	Bandwidth requirement can be high.
	Use if the device is located behind a Firewall. Does not
	support multicast.
	UDP
	Used for connectionless and lightweight data
	transmission in private networks. Data packets can get
	lost. Bandwidth requirement can be low.
	Supports multicast.

Entry in the Type list	Available configuration settings
ONVIF	Stream ONVIF Media Profile Contains advanced settings including a specific camera including amongst others the encoding settings. Video source Contains basic video settings including a specific camera.
	Token Select a profile number. If you selected Video source, usually only one entry is available.
	Name Displays the display name of the profile if ONVIF Media Profile is selected. If multiple names are available, <multiple> is displayed.</multiple>

Table 23.1: Protocol settings

VSG Camera Name

Change the camera name if required. This name is used for VRM and for Bosch Video Client.

See also

- Adding a Bosch camera to a VSG, page 73
- Adding an ONVIF camera to a VSG, page 73

23.31 **Recording profiles tab (Video Streaming Gateway)**



Recording tab > Recording Profiles tab

Allows you to switch recording on or off for each VSG camera.

Recording

In the list, select the desired entry.

See also

Switching on VSG recording, page 74

23.32 Multicast tabs (Video Streaming Gateway)



Network tab > Multicast tab

Allows you to configure multicast for the assigned cameras.

Enable

Click to enable multicast for this camera.

Multicast Address

Insert a valid multicast address (in the range 224.0.0.0 - 239.255.255.255).

Type in 1.0.0.0. A unique multicast address is automatically inserted based on the MAC address of the device.

When a firewall is used, enter a port value that is configured as non-blocked port in the firewall.

Streaming

Click to enable continuous multicast streaming to the switch. This means that the multicast connection is not preceded by a RCP+ registration. The encoder streams always all data to the switch. The switch in return (if no IGMP multicast filtering is supported or configured) sends this data to all ports, with the result that the switch will flood.

You need streaming when using a non-Bosch device for receiving a multicast stream.

See also

Configuring multicast for VSG, page 74

Advanced tab (Video Streaming Gateway) 23.33



Service tab > Advanced tab

Allows you to activate logging for Video Streaming Gateway.

23.34 Live Only page



Allows you to add and configure encoders used for live only. You can add Bosch encoders and ONVIF network video transmitters.

23.34.1 **ONVIF Encoder page**



Displays information on a live only ONVIF network video transmitter added to your Bosch VMS.

Displays the name of the ONVIF device. You can rename it in the Device Tree directly.

Network Address

Displays the IP address of the device.

Video Inputs

Displays the number of cameras connected to this encoder.

See also

Adding a live only encoder, page 68

23.34.2 Add ONVIF dialog box



Network Address

Type in the IP address of your ONVIF encoder.

Number of video inputs

Type in the number of cameras connected to this encoder.

See also

Adding a live only encoder, page 68

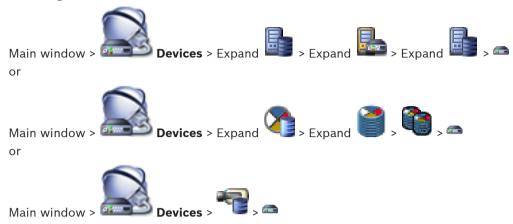
Local Storage page 23.35



Encoders / Decoders page 24

The count of items below an entry is displayed in square brackets.

To configure an encoder:



To configure a decoder:



Most of the settings on the encoder/ decoder pages are active immediately after you click

. If you click another tab without clicking and changes have occurred, two corresponding message boxes are displayed. Confirm them both if you want to save. To change the access password right-click the device icon and click Change password.... To display the device in a Web browser right-click the device icon and click Show Webpage in Browser.

Note:

Depending on the selected encoder or camera, not all pages described here are available for each device. The wording used here for describing the field labels can deviate from your software.

Click a tab to display the corresponding property page.

24.1 Unit Access page

24.1.1 **Identification / Camera identification**

Device name

Type the name of the device.

The name simplifies the management of multiple devices in large systems. The name is used for identification of a device. Use a name that makes it as easy as possible to identify its

Do not use any special characters in the name. Special characters are not supported and may cause problems, e.g. with playback.



to update the name in the Device Tree.

Device ID

Type the ID of the device.

Camera ID

Type the ID of the camera.

Initiator name

Displays the iSCSI initiator name. The initiator name is automatically displayed after a connection is established.

Initiator extension

Type your own text to make the unit easier to identify in large iSCSI systems. This text is added to the initiator name, separated from it by a full stop.

24.1.2 Camera name

Camera

Type the name of the camera. Ensure that Camera 1 is allocated to Video Input 1, Camera 2 to Video Input 2, etc.

The camera name facilitates the identification of the remote camera location, for example in case of an alarm. Use a name that makes it as easy as possible to identify the location. Do not use any special characters in the name. Special characters are not supported and may cause problems, for example the play back of recordings. The settings on this page apply to all camera inputs.



to update the name in the Device Tree.

24.1.3 Version information

Hardware version

Displays the version of the hardware.

Firmware version

Displays the version of the firmware.

24.2 Date/Time page

If there are multiple units operating in your system or network, it is necessary to synchronize their internal clocks.

Device date format Device date Device time

If there are multiple devices operating in your system or network, it is important to synchronize their internal clocks. For example, it is only possible to identify and correctly evaluate simultaneous recordings when all devices are operating on the same time.

Synchr. PC

Click to apply the system time from your computer to the device.

Device time zone

Select your time zone from the list.

Daylight saving time

Set by Bosch VMS Management Server.

Time server IP address

Set by Bosch VMS Management Server.

Time server type

Set by Bosch VMS Management Server. Default setting is SNTP.

24.3 Video Input page

This function allows you to display important supplementary information in the video image. These information can be enabled individually.

Camera name stamping

Set the position of the camera name overlay.

Click the item you want to select.

Off

No camera name is displayed in the video image.

Bottom

The camera name is displayed at the bottom of the video image.

The camera name is displayed on the top of the video image.

Enter the position where the camera name is displayed in the video image.

Time stamping

Sets the position of the time overlay.

Click the item you want to select.

No time and date is displayed in the video image.

Bottom

The time and date is displayed at the bottom of the video image.

The time and date is displayed on the top of the video image.

Custom

Enter the position where the time and date is displayed in the video image.

Display milliseconds

If necessary, you can also display milliseconds. This information can be useful for recorded video images; however, it does increase the processor's computing time.

Click the item you want to select.

Milliseconds are displayed in the video image.

Milliseconds are not displayed in the video image.

Alarm mode stamping

If necessary, a text message is displayed in the image in case of an alarm.

A text message is displayed in the video image.

No text message is displayed in the video image.

Custom

Enter the position where the text message is displayed in the video image.

Displayed alarm message

Type the message to be displayed in case of an alarm. The maximum text length is 31 characters.

Click the item you want to select.

In case of an alarm a message is displayed in the video image.

Off

No alarm message is displayed in the video image.

Custom

Enter the position where a message is displayed in the video image.

Title OSD

OSD titles can be displayed at a position of your choice.

Continuously displays sector or shot title overlays in the image. Enter the position.

Off

Does not displays sector or shot title overlays in the image.

Momentary

Continuously displays sector or shot title overlays in the image for a few seconds. Enter the position.

Camera OSD

Displays camera information, such as Digital Zoom, Iris open/close, and Focus near/far overlays in the image.

On

Displays camera information in the window. Enter the position.

Off

Does not display camera information in the window.

24.3.1 Picture settings

Allows you to adjust each video image to your requirements. All changes are displayed immediately. Be aware that changes in the image quality affects processor performance.

Video

Enter the number of the camera you want to adjust. If you want to do this for each camera, enter the number of the camera, adjust the settings (brightness, contrast, etc.), and then enter the next camera number, and adjust their settings.

Brightness

Enter the value to adjust the brightness of the video image to your working environment.

Contrast

Enter the value to adjust the contrast of the video image to your working environment.

Saturation

Enter the value to adjust the color saturation of the video image on your monitor as realistic as possible.

Low-pass filter

Enter the value to remove very fine noise from the image. This reduces and optimizes the bandwidth necessary for the image transmission over the network. The image resolution may be impaired. The higher the value, the flatter the image signal.

Default

Click to change the current settings to the factory settings.

Show Image

Click to display the image window of the encoder. In the menu bar of the video image you can select the video input that you want to display.

24.3.2 Input termination

Allows you to activate or deactivate the 75 Ohm terminating resistor for each video input. The numbering follows the labeling of the video inputs on the device. Every video input is closed at the time of delivery.

75 Ohm termination

Select one of the following:

- Off: Deactivates the 75 Ohm terminating resistor and loops through the video signal.
- On: Activates the 75 Ohm terminating resistor. No loop through of the video signal.

24.3.3 Source type

Allows you to connect video recorders as video source. Video recorders require a more tolerant setting as a result of unwanted effects caused by the mechanical components of a video recorder.

Input 1-Input 4

Select **VCR** to connect video recorders as video source. Select **Camera** to connect cameras. In some cases, selecting VCR also for cameras can lead to an improvement in the video image.

24.4 Installer Menu

24.4.1 Base frame rate

Select **25 ips** or **30 ips** as the base frame rate for the camera.

Note:

Shutter times and frame rates are affected by this value.

24.4.2 Camera LED

Disable the Camera LED on the camera to switch it off.

24.4.3 Mirror image

Select **On** to output a mirror image of the camera picture.

24.4.4 Flip image

Select **On** to output an upside down camera image.

24.4.5 Menu button

Select Disabled to prevent access to the install wizard via the menu button on the camera

24.4.6 **Heater (dome cameras only)**

Select Auto to let the camera determine when the heater should be switched on.

24.4.7 Reboot device

Click Reboot to restart the camera.

24.4.8 **Factory defaults**

Click **Defaults** to restore the factory defaults for the camera. A confirmation screen appears. Allow 5 seconds for the camera to optimize the picture after a mode reset.

24.4.9 **Lens Wizard**

Click Lens Wizard... to open a separate window which can be used to focus the camera lens.

24.5 **Picture Settings**

Contrast (0...255)

Adjust the contrast with the slider from 0 to 255.

Saturation (0...255)

Adjust the color saturation with the slider from 0 to 255.

Brightness (0...255)

Adjust the brightness with the slider from 0 to 255.

24.5.1 White balance

- Indoor: Allows the camera to continually adjust for optimal color reproduction in an indoor environment.
- Outdoor: Allows the camera to continually adjust for optimal color reproduction in an outdoor environment.
- In Manual mode the Red, Green, and Blue gain can be manually set to a desired position.

Hold

Click **Hold** to put ATW on hold and save the color settings.

R-gain

In Manual white balance mode, adjust the red gain from -50 to +50 to offset the factory white point alignment (reducing red introduces more cyan).

G-gain

In Manual white balance mode, adjust the green gain from -50 to +50 to offset the factory white point alignment.

B-gain

In Manual white balance mode, adjust the blue gain from -50 to +50 to offset the factory white point alignment (reducing blue introduces more yellow).

It is only necessary to change the white point offset for special scene conditions.

Default

Click **Default** to set all video values to their factory setting.

24.6 Recording Management page

Active recordings are indicated by



Point to the icon. Detailed information about the active recordings are displayed.

Before you make any changes, you must stop any active recordings. Active recordings are

indicated by an icon:

If you hover the pointer over the icon, detailed information about the active recordings are displayed.

To stop the recordings, click the Recording Scheduler tab and click Stop Recording.

Recordings manually managed

The recordings are managed locally on this encoder. All relevant settings must be carried out manually. The encoder / IP camera acts as a live only device. It is not be removed from VRM automatically.

Recording 1 managed by VRM

The recordings of this encoder are managed by the VRM system.

iSCSI Media tab

Only available if you click Recordings manually managed. Click to display the available iSCSI storage connected to this encoder.

Local Media tab

Only available if you click Recordings manually managed. Click to display the available local storage on this encoder.

Only available if you click **Recordings manually managed**. Click to add a storage device to the list of managed storage media.

Only available if you click Recordings manually managed. Click to remove a storage device from the list of managed storage media.

Overwrite older recordings

If activated, the oldest recordings are deleted as soon as the medium is full. A loop recording process occurs.

If not activated, nothing more is recorded on the disk once it is full.

24.7 Recording preferences page

The **Recording preferences** page is displayed for each encoder. This page only appears if a device is assigned to a VRM system.

Pool page, page 170

Primary target

Only visible if the Recording preferences mode list on the Pool page is set to Failover. Select the entry for the required target.

Secondary target

Only visible if the Recording preferences mode list on the Pool page is set to Failover. Select the entry for the required target for configuring failover mode.

See also

Pool page, page 170

24.8 VCA page

The device contains an integrated Video Content Analysis (VCA), which can detect and analyze changes in the signal using image processing algorithms. Such changes are triggered by motion in the camera's field of view.

If there is not enough computing power, priority is given to live images and recordings. This can lead to impairment of the VCA system. Observe the processor load and optimize the settings of the device or the VCA settings, if necessary.

VCA configuration

You can configure profiles with different VCA configurations. You can save profiles on your computer's hard drive and load saved profiles from there. This can be useful if you want to test a number of different configurations. Save a functioning configuration and test new settings. You can use the saved configuration to restore the original settings at any time.

Select a VCA profile and change the settings if necessary.

To rename the VCA profile:

Click . The **Edit** dialog box is displayed. Type the new name, and then click **OK**.

Preset

Select the preset if required.

Alarm status

Displays the current alarm state to check the effects of your settings immediately.

Aggregation time [s]

You can set an aggregation time of between 0 and 20 seconds if necessary. The aggregation time always starts when an event occurs. All following events that occur during the aggregation time are counted as one event. This ensures that events following in quick succession do not trigger many alarms. During the aggregation time no further event is

The post-alarm time set for alarm recordings only starts once the aggregation time has expired.

Analysis type

Select the analysis algorithm. By default, only MOTION+ is available. MOTION+ offers a motion detector and essential tamper detection functionality.

Additional analysis algorithms with comprehensive functions, such as IVA, are available from Bosch Security Systems.

Metadata is always created for a video content analysis, unless this was explicitly excluded. Depending on the analysis type selected and the relevant configuration, additional information overlays the video image in the preview window next to the parameter settings. With the MOTION+ analysis type, for example, the sensor fields in which motion is recorded will be marked with rectangles.

Motion detector

See Motion detector (MOTION+ only), page 190.

Tamper detection

See Tamper detection, page 191

Click to load a saved profile. The the **Open** dialog box is displayed. Select the filename of the profile you want to load, and then click **OK**.

Click to save the profile settings to another file. The Save dialog box is displayed. Type the filename, select the folder where to save the file, and then click OK.

Click to return all settings to their default values.

24.8.1 Motion detector (MOTION+ only)

Reflections of light (from glass surfaces, etc.), lights switching on and off, or changes in the light level caused by cloud movement on a sunny day can trigger unintended responses from the motion detector and generate false alarms. For indoor surveillance, ensure constant lighting of the areas during the day and at night. Run a series of tests at different times of the day and night to ensure that the video sensor is operating as intended.

Debounce time 1s (MOTION+ only)

The debounce time is intended to prevent very brief events from triggering individual alarms. If the **Debounce time 1s** option is activated, an event must last at least 1 second to trigger an alarm.

Select Area...

Click to configure the areas to be monitored by the motion detector. The Select Area dialog box is displayed.

See Select Area dialog box, page 190.

Sensitivity (only with MOTION+ functionality)

Move the slider to adjust the sensitivity of the motion detector. The motion detector reacts to variations in the brightness of the video image. The darker the observation area, the higher the value that must be selected.

Minimum object size (only with MOTION+ functionality)

Specify the number of sensor fields that a moving object must cover to generate an alarm. This settings prevents small objects from triggering an alarm.

A minimum value of 4 is recommended. This value corresponds to four sensor fields.

24.8.2 Select Area dialog box

This dialog box displays the camera image. Within this window you can activate the areas of the image to be monitored.

To activate an area:

In the camera image, drag over the area you want to activate. Activated areas are marked yellow.

To deactivate an area:

In the camera image, press the SHIFT key and click the area you want to deactivate.

To obtain commands in the window:

To see the commands for activating or deactivating the areas, right-click anywhere in the window. The following commands are available:

Undo

Undoes the last command.

Set All

Activates the entire camera image.

Clear All

Deactivates the entire camera image.

Tool

Defines the shape of the mouse pointer.

Settings

Displays the Editor Settings dialog box. In this dialog box you can change the sensitivity and the minimum object size.

24.8.3 Tamper detection

You can detect tampering of cameras and video cables by means of various options. Run a series of tests at different times of the day and night to ensure that the video sensor is operating as intended.

The options for tamper detection can only be set for fixed cameras. Dome cameras or other motorized cameras cannot be protected in this manner as the movement of the camera itself causes changes in the video image that are too great.

Scene too bright

Select the check box if tampering associated with exposure to extreme light (for instance, shining a flashlight directly on the lens) should trigger an alarm. The average brightness of the scene provides a basis for recognition.

Global change

Select the check box if the changes, set with the Global change slider, should lead to trigger an alarm.

Move the slider to set how large the changes in the video image must be for an alarm to be triggered. Set a high value if changes that occur simultaneously in few areas should lead to trigger an alarm. Set a low value if changes that occur simultaneously in a large number of areas should lead to trigger an alarm. This setting allows you to detect, independently of motion alarms, manipulation of the orientation or location of a camera resulting from turning the camera mount bracket.

This setting is independent of the areas selected in the Select Area window (see Select Area dialog box, page 190).

Scene too dark

Select the check box if tampering associated with covering the lens (for instance, by spraying paint on the lens) should trigger an alarm. The average brightness of the scene provides a basis for recognition.

Scene too noisy

Select the check box if tampering associated with EMC interference (noisy scene as the result of a strong interference signal in the vicinity of the video lines) should trigger an alarm.

24.9 **Audio Alarm page**

Some encoders can create alarms on the basis of audio signals. You can configure signal strengths and frequency ranges in such a way that false alarms, for example due to machine noise or background noise, are avoided.

Note: First set up normal audio transmission before you configure the audio alarm. See Audio page, page 198

Audio alarm

Select **On** if you want the device to generate audio alarms.

Enter a unique and clear name. The name makes it easier to identify the alarm in extensive video monitoring systems.

Caution!

Do not use any special characters, for example &, in the name.

Special characters are not supported by the internal recording management and may therefore result in the Bosch VMS Archive Player being unable to play back the recording.

Signal Ranges

You can exclude particular signal ranges in order to avoid false alarms. For this reason the total signal is divided into 13 tonal ranges (mel scale). Select or clear the boxes below the graphic to include or exclude individual ranges.

Threshold

Set up the threshold on the basis of the signal visible in the graphic You can set the threshold using the slide control or, alternatively, you can move the white line directly in the graphic using the mouse.

Sensitivity

You can use this setting to adapt the sensitivity to the sound environment. You can effectively suppress individual signal peaks. A high value represents a high level of sensitivity.

24.10 Privacy Masks page

Privacy Masking is used to block out an area of a scene from being viewed and recorded. For example, you might want to hide public places adjacent to your property. You can define 15 privacy masks in total.

Hide masks

To hide all masks from an image view, select the check box.

Privacy masks

Select the privacy mask number. The preview window displays a gray rectangle in the scene.

Select the check box to activate the privacy mask. After saving, the content inside the privacy mask is no longer visible in the preview. This area is blocked out from being viewing and recording.

Pattern

Pattern of the privacy mask.

Preview window

If necessary, change the size of the privacy mask area and move it to the position you want.

24.11 Camera page

White Balance

Adjusts the color settings to maintain the quality of the white areas of the image.

- ATW: Allows the camera to continuously adjust color reproduction.
- Indoor: White balance tracking for indoor use.
- **Outdoor**: White balance tracking for outdoor use.
- AWB Hold: Places the ATW on hold and saves the color settings.
- Extended ATW (default): Allows the camera to constantly adjust for optimal color reproduction.
- **Manual**: Red and Blue gain can be manually set to a desired position.

The red gain adjustment offsets the factory white point alignment (reducing red introduces more cyan).

Blue Gain

The blue gain adjustment offsets the factory white point alignment (reducing blue introduces more yellow). It is only necessary to change the white point offset for special scene conditions.

Gain Control

Adjusts the automatic gain control (AGC). Automatically sets the gain to the lowest possible value needed to maintain a good picture.

- Fixed: no enhancement. This setting disables the Max. Gain Level option. If you select this option, for example the AutoDome Junior HD makes the following changes automatically:
 - Night Mode: Switches to value Color.
 - Auto Iris: Switches to value Constant.
- AGC (default): electronically brightens dark scenes, which may cause graininess in low light scenes

Max Gain Level

Controls the maximum value the gain can have during AGC operation. To set the maximum gain level, choose from:

- Normal
- Medium
- High

Sharpness

Adjusts the sharpness of the picture. To set the sharpness, type a value between 1 and 15 inclusive. The default setting is 12.

Shutter Mode

- Off: Turns the Auto SensUP off.
- Auto SensUp: Increases camera sensitivity by increasing the integration time on the CCD. This is accomplished by integrating the signal from a number of consecutive video frames to reduce signal noise.

If you select this option, for example the AutoDome Junior HD makes the following change automatically:

Auto Iris: Switches to value Constant.

Shutter

Adjusts the electronic shutter speed (AES). Controls the time period for which light is gathered by the collecting device. The default setting is 1x (60 Hz: 1/30, 50 Hz: 1/25)

Auto SensUp Maximum

Sets the Auto SensUp minimum value. The Auto SensUp Min. value is the factor by which the sensitivity of the camera is increased. The default setting is 15x

Backlight Comp

- On: Optimizes the video level for the selected area of the image. Parts outside this area may be underexposed or overexposed.
- Off: default setting

Stabilization

- On: Turns on video stabilization.
- Off: Turns off video stabilization.

Night Mode

Selects night mode (Black/White) to enhance lighting in low light scenes. Select from the following options:

Monochrome: Forces the camera to stay in Night Mode and transmit monochrome images.

- Color: The camera does not switch to Night Mode regardless of ambient light conditions.
- Auto: The camera switches out of Night Mode after the ambient light level reaches a predefined threshold.

Night Mode Threshold

Adjusts the level of light at which the camera automatically switches out of night mode (B/W) operation. Select a value between 10 and 55 (in increments of 5), where 10 is earlier and 55 is later.

24.11.1 Mode page

A mode is a set of image parameters that are set in the camera when that mode is selected (Installer menu settings are excluded). Six pre-defined modes are available for typical scenarios. After a mode has been selected, additional changes can be made through the user interface.

Current mode

Select the mode you wish to use from the drop-down menu.

The name of the selected mode is displayed.

Copy mode to

Select the mode from the drop-down menu to which you wish to copy the active user mode.

Restore Mode Defaults

Click Restore Mode Defaults to restore the factory default modes. Confirm you decision.

The six factory default modes are as follows:

Mode 1 - Outdoor

This mode covers most situations. It should be used in applications where the lighting changes from day to night. It takes into account sun highlights and street lighting.

Mode 2 - Motion

This mode is used for monitoring the traffic movement on roads or parking lots. It can also be used for industrial applications where fast moving objects are to be monitored. Motion artifacts are minimized. This mode should be optimized for a sharp and detailed picture in colour and black/white mode.

Mode 3 - Low light

This mode is optimized for sufficient details at low light. It requires more bandwidth and can introduce motion judder.

Mode 4 - Intelligent AE

This mode is optimized for scenes with people moving in front of a bright background.

Mode 5 - Indoor

This mode is similar to the outdoor mode but it avoids the limitations imposed by the sun or street lighting.

Mode 6 - Vibrant

This mode has enhanced contrast, sharpness and saturation.

24.11.2 ALC

ALC mode

Select the mode:

- Fluorescent 50 Hz
- Fluorescent 60 Hz
- Outdoor

ALC level

Adjust the video output level (-15 to 0 to +15).

Select the range within which the ALC will operate. A positive value is more useful for lowlight conditions; a negative value is more useful for very bright conditions.

Exposure/frame rate

Auto exposure/frame rate

Select to let the camera automatically set the optimum shutter speed. The camera tries to maintain the selected default shutter speed as long as the light level of the scene permits. Select the minimum frame rate for automatic exposure:

1.5625 to 25 ips

or

1.875 to 30 ips

The values available depend on the value set for the Base Frame Rate in the Installer Menu.

Fixed exposure

Select to set a fixed shutter speed.

Select the shutter speed for fixed exposure:

1/25, 1/30, 1/33, 1/40, 1/50, 1/60, 1/100, 1/120 1/250, 1/500, 1/1000, 1/2500, 1/5000, 1/7500, 1/15000)

The values available depend on the value set for the ALC mode.

Day/night

Auto - the camera switches the IR cut-off filter on and off depending on the scene illumination level.

Monochrome - the IR cut-off filter is removed, giving full IR sensitivity.

Color - the camera always produces a color signal regardless of light levels.

Switch level

Set the video level at which the camera in Auto mode switches to monochrome operation (-15 to 0 to +15).

A low (negative) value means that the camera switches to monochrome at a lower light level. A high (positive) value means that the camera switches to monochrome at a higher light level.

24.11.3 **Enhance**

Wide dynamic range

Select Auto for automatic Wide Dynamic Range (WDR); select Off to disable WDR.

WDR can only be active if Auto exposure is selected, and there is a match between the base frame rate selected in the installer menu and the ALC fluorescent mode frequency. If there is a conflict, a pop-up window will suggest a solution and adjust the appropriate settings.

Sharpness level

Adjusts the black level between -15 and +15. Zero position of slider corresponds to the factory default level.

A low (negative) value makes the picture less sharp. Increasing sharpness brings out more detail. Extra sharpness can enhance the details of license plates, facial features and the edges of certain surfaces but can increase bandwidth requirements.

Backlight compensation

Select **Off** to switch off backlight compensation.

Select Auto to capture details in high-contrast and extremely bright-dark conditions.

Select Intelligent AE to capture object detail in scenes with people moving in front of a bright background

Contrast enhancement

Select **On** to increase the contrast in low contrast conditions.

Intelligent DNR

Select On to activate intelligent Dynamic Noise Reduction (DNR) which reduces noise based on motion and light levels.

Temporal noise filtering

Adjusts the temporal noise filtering level between -15 and +15. The higher the value, the more noise filtering.

Spatial noise filtering

Adjusts the spatial noise filtering level between -15 and +15. The higher the value, the more noise filtering.

24.12 Lens page

24.12.1 **Focus**

Autofocus

Continuously adjusts the lens automatically to the correct focus for the sharpest picture.

- One push (default): Activates the Auto Focus feature after the camera stops moving. Once focused, Auto Focus is inactive until the camera is moved again.
- **Auto focus**: Auto Focus is always active.
- Manual: Auto Focus is inactive.

Focus Polarity

- Normal (default): Focus controls operate normally.
- Reverse: Focus controls are reversed.

Focus Speed

Controls how fast the Auto focus will readjust when the focus becomes blurred. Select from the following options:

- Super slow
- Slow
- Medium
- **Fast**

24.12.2 Iris

Auto Iris

Automatically adjusts the lens to allow the correct illumination of the camera sensor. This type of lens is recommended for use when there are low light or changing light conditions.

- **Constant** (default): Camera constantly adjusts to varying light conditions.
 - If you select this option, for example the AutoDome Junior HD makes the following changes automatically:
 - Gain Control: switches to AGC
 - Shutter Mode: switches to Normal
- Manual: Camera must be manually adjusted to compensate for varying light conditions.

Iris Polarity

Capability to reverse the operation of the iris button on the controller.

- Normal (default): Iris controls operate normally.
- Reverse: Iris controls are reversed.

Auto Iris Level

Increases or decreases brightness according to the amount of light. Type a value between 1 and 15, inclusive. The default setting is 8.

Iris Speed

Controls how fast the Iris will adjust the opening according to the illumination of the scene. Type a value between 1 and 10, inclusive. The default setting is 5.

24.12.3 Zoom

Max Zoom Speed

Controls the zoom speed. Default setting: Fast

Zoom Polarity

Capability to reverse the operation of the zoom button on the controller.

- Normal (default): Zoom controls operate normally.
- Reverse: 700m controls are reversed.

Digital Zoom

Digital zoom is a method of decreasing (narrowing) the apparent angle of view of a digital video image. It is accomplished electronically, without any adjustment of the camera's optics, and no optical resolution is gained in the process.

- Off (default): Enables the Digital Zoom feature.
- On: Disables the Digital Zoom feature.

24.13 PTZ page

Auto Pan Speed

Continuously pans the camera at a speed between right and left limit settings. Type a value between 1 and 60 (expressed in degrees), inclusive. The default setting is 30.

Selects the time period the dome must be not controlled until the inactivity event will be executed.

- Off (default): Camera remains on a current scene indefinitely.
- Scene 1: Camera returns to Preset 1.
- **Previous Aux**: Camera returns to the previous activity.

Inactivity Period

Determines the behavior of the dome when the control for dome is inactive. Select a time period from the pull-down list (3 sec. - 10 min.). The default setting is 2 minutes.

Auto Pivot

The Auto Pivot tilts the camera through the vertical position as the camera is rotated to maintain the correct orientation of the image.

Set the Auto Pivot to **On** (default) to automatically rotate the camera 180° when following a subject traveling directly beneath the camera. To disable this feature, click Off.

Select On (default) to freeze the image while the camera moves to a predetermined scene position.

Tilt up limit

Click **Set**, to set the upper tilt limit of the camera.

Tilt limits

Click Reset to clear the upper tilt limit.

24.14 **Prepositions and Tours page**

Allows you to define the individual scenes and a preposition tour comprised of the defined scenes.

To add scenes:

Click

To delete scenes:

Select the scene, then click X.

To overwrite (save) scenes:

Click 属

To view scenes:

Select the scene, then click

Include in standard tour (marked with *)

Select the check box if the scene should be part of the preposition tour. The asterisk (*) on the left of the scene name indicates this.

24.15 Sectors page

Sector

The pan capability (for example for the AutoDome Junior HD camera) is 360° and is divided into eight equal sectors. This allows you to apply a title for each sector and to designate any sectors as a Blanked Sector.

To define a title for sectors:

- Place the pointer in the input box to the right of the sector number.
- Type a title for the sector, up to 20 characters long.
- To blank the sector, click the check box to the right of the sector title.

24.16 Misc page

Address

Allows the appropriate device to be operated via the numerical address in the control system. Type a number between 0000 and 9999, inclusive, to identify the camera.

24.17 Logs page

This page allows you to display and to save log files.

Click to obtain the log file information. The log files are displayed in the overview.

Click to save the log files.

24.18 Audio page

This function allows you to set the gain of the audio signals to suit your specific requirements. The current video image is shown in the small window next to the slide controls to help you check the selected audio source and improve assignments. Your changes are effective immediately.

The numbering of the audio inputs follows the labeling on the device and the assignment to the respective video inputs. The assignment cannot be changed for Web browser connections.

Audio

The audio signals are sent in a separate data stream parallel to the video data, and so increase the network load. The audio data are encoded according to G.711 and require an additional bandwidth of approximately 80 kbps for each connection.

- On: Transmits audio data.
- Off: No transmission of audio data.

Line In 1 - Line In 4

Enter the value of the gain of the audio signal. Make sure that the display of the slider lacksquareremains green.

Line Out

Enter the value of the gain. Make sure that the display of the slider $\sqrt{\ }$ remains green.

Microphone (MIC)

Enter the value of the gain for the microphone.

Line Out/Speaker (SPK)

Enter the value of the gain of the line and the loudspeaker.

Recording format

Select a format for audio recording.

G.711: default value.

L16: Select L16 if you want better audio quality with higher sampling rates. This requires approximately eight times the G.711 bandwidth.

24.19 Relay page

This function allows you to configure the switching behavior of the relay outputs.

You can configure the switching behavior of the relay outputs. For each relay, you can specify an open switch relay (normally closed contact) or a closed switch relay (normally open contact).

You can also specify whether an output should operate as a bistable or monostable relay. In bistable mode, the triggered state of the relay is maintained. In monostable mode, you can set the time after which the relay returns to the idle state.

You can select different events that automatically activate an output. It is possible, for example, to turn on a floodlight by triggering a motion alarm and then turning the light off again when the alarm has stopped.

Idle state

Select **Open** if you want the relay to operate as an NO contact, or select **Closed** if the relay is to operate as an NC contact.

Operating mode

Select an operating mode for the relay.

For example, if you want an alarm-activated lamp to stay on after the alarm ends, select the Bistable entry. If you wish an alarm-activated siren to sound for ten seconds, select the 10 s entry.

Relay follows

If required, select a specific event that will trigger the relay. The following events are possible triggers:

Off: Relay is not triggered by events

Connection: Trigger whenever a connection is made

Video alarm: Trigger by interruption of the video signal at the corresponding input

Motion alarm: Trigger by motion alarm at the corresponding input, as configured on the VCA page.

Local input: Trigger by the corresponding external alarm input

Remote input: Trigger by remote station's corresponding switching contact (only if a connection exists)

Note:

The numbers in the lists of selectable events relate to the corresponding connections on the device, Video alarm 1, for example to the Video In 1 connection.

Trigger relay

Click the relay button to trigger the relay manually (for example, for testing purposes or to activate a door opener).

The relay button displays the state of each relay.

Red: Relay is activated. Blue: Relay is not activated.

24.20 Periphery page

24.20.1 COM₁

This function allows you to configure the serial interface parameters according to your requirements.

If the device is working in multicast mode, the first remote location to establish a video connection to the device is also assigned the transparent data connection. However, after about 15 seconds of inactivity the data connection is automatically terminated and another remote location can exchange transparent data with the device.

Serial port function

Select a controllable device from the list. Select Transparent data to transmit transparent data via the serial port. Select Terminal to operate the device from a terminal.

After selecting a device, the remaining parameters in the window are set automatically and should not be changed.

Baud rate (bps)

Select the value for the transmission rate.

Stop bits

Select the number of stop bits per character.

Parity check

Select the type of parity check.

Interface mode

Select the protocol for the serial interface.

24.21 Network Access page

The settings on this page are used to integrate the device into an existing network.

Note:

After changing the Subnet mask and/or the Gateway address, restart the computer.

Automatic IP assignment

Notice!



If a DHCP server is employed in the network for the dynamic assignment of IP addresses, activate acceptance of IP addresses automatically assigned to the device.

Certain applications (VRM, Bosch Video Management System, Bosch Video

Client, Configuration Manager) use the IP address for the unique assignment of the device. If using these applications, the DHCP server must support the fixed assignment between IP address and MAC address, and must be appropriately set up so that, once an IP address is assigned, it is retained each time the system is rebooted.

Subnet mask:

Type the subnet mask number of the device obtained from your network administrator.

Type the IP address for the gateway to connect the device to a remote location in a different subnet. Otherwise, this box can remain empty (0.0.0.0).

Prefix length

Enter the appropriate prefix length for the set IP address.

Gateway address

For the device to establish a connection to a remote location in a different subnet, enter the IP address of the gateway here. Otherwise, this field can remain empty (0.0.0.0).

DNS server address

Type the IP address of the DNS server for this device.

Units listed on a DNS server are easier to access. To establish an Internet connection to the device, it is sufficient to enter the name of the device - used in the DNS server - as URL in the browser. Secure and dynamic DNS servers are supported.

Video transmission

Select TCP as protocol for units used behind firewalls. Select UDP for units used in a local network.

Note:

- UDP supports multicast. TCP does not. The Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) value in UDP mode is 1514 bytes.
- Bosch VMS NVR only supports UDP.

HTTP browser port

Select the HTTP browser port from the list. The default port is 80. To limit connection to HTTPS, deactivate the HTTP port. To do this, select Off.

HTTPS browser port

To limit browser access to encrypted connections, choose an HTTPS port from the list. The standard HTTPS port is 443. Select the Off option to deactivate HTTPS ports and limit connections to unencrypted ports.

The camera uses the TLS 1.0 protocol. Ensure that the browser has been configured to support this protocol. Also ensure that Java application support is activated (in the Java Plugin Control Panel of the Windows Control Panel).

To limit connections to SSL encryption, set the Off option in the HTTP browser port, the RCP+ port, and Telnet support. This deactivates all unencrypted connections allowing connections on the HTTPS port only.

Configure and activate encryption for media data (video, audio, metadata) on the Encryption page.

RCP+ port 1756

Select On to allow unencrypted connections on this port. Select Off to allow only encrypted connections (not supported).

Telnet support

Select **On** to allow unencrypted connections on this port. Select **Off** to allow only encrypted connections (not supported).

Interface mode ETH 1 / Interface mode ETH 2

If necessary select the value for the interface, for example 100 Mbps HD. This value is device dependent and must be set individually.

Network MSS [Byte]

Enter the maximum segment size (MSS) for the IP packet's user data.

This setting allows you to adjust the size of the data packets to the network environment and to optimize data transmission. Observe the MTU value of 1514 bytes in UDP mode.

iSCSI MSS [Byte]

Enter the Maximum Segment Size (MSS) for a connection to the iSCSI system.

The maximum segment size for a connection to the iSCSI system can be higher than for the other data traffic via the network. The size depends on the network structure. A higher value is only useful if the iSCSI system is located in the same subnet as the device.

MAC address

Displays the MAC address.

24.22 Advanced page

24.22.1 **SNMP**

The device supports the SNMP V2 (Simple Network Management Protocol) for managing and monitoring network components, and can send SNMP messages (traps) to IP addresses. The device supports SNMP MIB II in the unified code.

SNMP

Select **On** to activate the SNMP function.

1. SNMP host address / 2. SNMP host address

Type the IP addresses of one or two target units. The device (for example encoder, camera) sends SNMP traps automatically to the target units.

If you do not enter IP addresses, the device only replies to SNMP requests and does not send SNMP traps to the target units.

SNMP traps

Allows you to select which traps the device sends to the target units. To do this, click **Select**. The **SNMP traps** dialog box is displayed.

SNMP traps dialog box

Select the check boxes of the appropriate traps, and then click **OK**.

24.22.2 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x allows you to communicate with the device if a RADIUS server is used in a network.

Authentication

Select **On** to activate 802.1x.

Identity

Type the user name that the RADIUS server uses for identifying the device.

Type the password that the RADIUS server uses for identifying the device.

24.22.3 RTSP

RTSP port

If necessary, select a different port for the exchange of the RTSP data. The default port is 554. Off disables the RTSP function.

24.22.4 **UPnP**

You can activate the universal plug and play function (UPnP). When activated the camera reacts on requests from the network and will be registered automatically as a new network device on the inquiring computers. The access to the camera is then possible using the Windows file explorer, and without knowledge of the camera's IP address.

Note:

In order to use the UPnP function on a computer with Windows XP or Windows Vista, the Universal Plug and Play Device Host and the SSDP Discovery services must be activated.

24.22.5 TCP metadata input

This feature allows a device to receive data from an external TCP sender, for example an ATM or POS device, and store it as metadata.

TCP port

Select the port for TCP communication. Select Off to deactivate the TCP metadata function.

Sender IP address

Type the IP address of the TCP metadata sender here.

24.22.6 **Quality of Service**

Quality of service

The priority of the different data channels can be set by defining the DiffServ Code Point (DSCP). Enter a number between 0 and 252 as a multiple of four. For alarm video you can set a higher priority than for regular video and you can define a Post Alarm Time over which this priority is maintained.

24.23 Multicast page

In addition to a 1:1 connection between an encoder and a single receiver (unicast), the device enables multiple receivers to receive the video signal from an encoder simultaneously. The device either duplicates the data stream itself and then distributes it to multiple receivers (Multi-unicast) or it sends a single data stream to the network, where the data stream is simultaneously distributed to multiple receivers in a defined group (Multicast). You can enter a dedicated multicast address and port for each stream.

The prerequisite for multicast operation is a multicast-capable network that uses the UDP and IGMP protocols. Other group management protocols are not supported. The TCP protocol does not support multicast connections.

A special IP address (class D address) must be configured for multicast operation in a multicast-enabled network. The network must support group IP addresses and the Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP V2). The address range is from 225.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. The multicast address can be the same for multiple streams. However, it is then necessary to use a different port in each case so that multiple data streams are not sent simultaneously using the same port and the same multicast address.

Note: The settings must be done for each encoder (video input) and for each stream individually. The numbering follows the labeling of the video inputs on the device.

To enable simultaneous data reception on several receivers you need to activate the multicast function. To do this, select the check box. Then enter the multicast address.

Multicast Address

Enter a valid multicast address for each stream from the relevant encoder (video input) to be operated in multicast mode (duplication of the data streams in the network).

With the setting 0.0.0.0 the encoder for the relevant stream operates in multi-unicast mode (copying of data streams in the device). The device supports multi-unicast connections for up to five simultaneously connected receivers.

Note: Duplication of data places a heavy demand on the device and can lead to impairment of the image quality under certain circumstances.

Assign a different port to each data stream if there are simultaneous data streams at the same multicast address.

Enter the port address of the required stream here.

Streaming

Select the check box to activate multicast streaming mode for the relevant stream. The device even streams multicast data if no connection is active.

For normal multicast operation, streaming is typically not required.

Packet TTL (only for Dinion IP, Gen4 and FlexiDome)

Enter a value to specify how long the multicast data packets are active on the network. If multicast is to be run via a router, the value must be greater than 1.

24.24 FTP Posting page

24.24.1 JPEG posting

This function allows you to save individual JPEG images on an FTP server at specific intervals. Then, retrieve these images at a later date to reconstruct alarm events, if required.

Image size

Select the resolution for the JPEG images.

Select how file names are created for the individual images that are transmitted.

The same file name is always used. An existing file is overwritten by the current file.

Increment

A number from 000 to 255 is added to the file name and automatically incremented by 1. When the number reaches 255, the number starts again from 000.

Date/time suffix

The date and time are automatically added to the file name. Ensure that the date and time of the device are always set correctly. For example, the file snap011008 114530.jpg was stored on October 1, 2008 at 11.45 and 30 seconds.

Posting interval (s; 0 = Off)

Enter the interval in seconds at which the images is sent to an FTP server. Enter zero for no images to be sent.

24.24.2 FTP server

FTP server IP address

Type the IP address of the FTP server on which to save the JPEG images.

FTP server login

Type your login name for the FTP server.

FTP server password

Type the password for the FTP server.

Path on FTP server

Type the exact path where to save the images on the FTP server.

Post JPEG from camera

Select the check box to activate the camera input for the JPEG image. The numbering follows the labeling of the video inputs on the device.

Max. bit rate

You can limit the bit rate for FTP posting.

24.25 **IP v4 Filter**

To restrict the range of IP addresses within which you can actively connect to the device, fill-in an IP address and mask. Two ranges can be defined.

Click Set and confirm to restrict access.

If either of these ranges are set, no IP V6 addresses are allowed to actively connect to the device.

The device itself may initiate a connection (for example, to send an alarm) outside the defined ranges if it is configured to do so.

24.26 Licenses page

This page allows you to enable additional functions or software modules.

Installation code

Displays the installation code.

Activation key

Type the activation key. The activation key cannot be deactivated and is not transferable to other units.

Installed licenses

Displays the installed licenses after their activation.

24.27 Decoder page

24.27.1 Decoder profile

Allows you to set the various options for the display of video images on an analog monitor or VGA monitor.

Monitor name

Type the name of the monitor. The monitor name facilitates the identification of the remote monitor location. Use a name that makes it as easy as possible to identify the location.



to update the name in the Device Tree.

Standard

Select the video output signal of the monitor you are using. Eight pre-configured settings for the VGA monitors are available in addition to the PAL and NTSC options for analog video monitors.

Caution!

Selecting a VGA setting with values outside the technical specification of the monitor can result in severe damage to the monitor. Refer to the technical documentation of the monitor you are using.

Window lavout

Select the default image layout for the monitor.

VGA screen size

Type the aspect ratio of the screen (for example 4 x 3) or the physical size of the screen in millimeters. The device uses this information to accurately scale the video image for distortion-free display.

24.27.2 Monitor display

The device recognizes transmission interruptions and displays a warning on the monitor.

Display transmission disturbance

Select **On** to display a warning in case of transmission interruption.

Disturbance sensitivity

Move the slider to adjust the level of the interruption that triggers the warning.

Disturbance notification text

Type the text of the warning the monitor displays when connection is lost. The maximum text length is 31 characters.

Delete decoder logo

Click to delete the logo that has been configured on the Web page of the decoder.

25 Maps and Structure page

The count of items below an entry is displayed in square brackets.



Permissions can get lost. If you move a group of devices, these devices loose their permission settings. You must set the permissions on the User Groups page again.

Displays the Device Tree, the Logical Tree, and the map window.

Allows you to introduce a structure for all the devices in your Bosch VMS. Your structure is displayed in the Logical Tree.

Allows you to perform the following tasks:

- Configuring the Full Logical Tree
- Managing resource files, assigning them to nodes
- Creating hot spots on a map

Resource files can be:

- Site map files
- Document files
- Web files
- Audio files
- Command Scripts
- Camera sequence files

Hot spots can be:

- Cameras
- Inputs
- Relays
- **Command Scripts**
- Sequences
- Links to other maps



Displays a dialog box for managing resource files.



Displays a dialog box for adding a Command Script to the Logical Tree.



Displays a dialog box for adding a camera sequence file.



Displays a dialog box for adding a node.



Displays a dialog box for adding map resource files.



Displays a dialog box for adding an HTML file.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by $^{\times}$. Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click ...



Resource Manager dialog box 25.1



or





Main window > Allows you to manage resource files.

You can manage the following file formats:

- DWF files (map resource files)
 - For use in Operator Client, these files are converted to a bitmap format.
- HTML files (HTML documents, e.g. action plans)
- MP3 (audio file)
- TXT files (text files)
- URL files (contain links to Web pages)
- MHT files (Web archives)
- WAV (audio file)



Click to display a dialog box for importing a resource file.



Click to display the Add URL dialog box.



Click to remove the selected resource file.



Click to rename the selected resource file.



Click to display a dialog box for replacing the selected resource file with another one.



Click to display a dialog box for exporting the selected resource file.

25.2 **Select Resource dialog box**



Allows you to add a map file in DWF format to the Logical Tree.

Select a resource file:

Click a filename to select a map file. The content of the selected file is displayed in the preview pane.

Manage...

Click to display the Resource Manager dialog box.

25.3 **Sequence Builder dialog box**



Allows you to manage camera sequences.



Click to display the **Add Sequence** dialog box.



Click to rename a camera sequence.



Click to remove the selected camera sequence.

Add Step

Click to display the **Add Sequence Step** dialog box.

Remove Step

Click to remove selected steps.

Step

Displays the number of the step. All cameras of a particular step have the same dwell time.

Allows you to change the dwell time (seconds).

Camera Number

Click a cell to select a camera via its logical number.

Camera

Click a cell to select a camera via its name.

Camera Function

Click a cell to change the function of the camera in this row.

Data

Type the time for the duration of the selected camera function. To configure this, you must have selected an entry in the Camera column and an entry in the Camera Function column.

Data Unit

Select the unit for the selected time, for example seconds. To configure this, you must have selected an entry in the Camera column and an entry in the Camera Function column.

Add to Logical Tree

Click to add the selected camera sequence to the Logical Tree and to close the dialog box.

25.4 Add Sequence dialog box

Maps and Structure > > Sequence Builder dialog box >

Allows you to configure the properties of a camera sequence.

Sequence name:

Type an appropriate name for the new camera sequence.

Logical number:

For using with a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, enter a logical number for the sequence.

Dwell time:

Enter the appropriate dwell time.

Cameras per step:

Enter the number of cameras in each step.

Steps:

Enter the appropriate number of steps.

25.5 Add Sequence Step dialog box



Allows you to add a step with a new dwell time to an existing camera sequence.

Enter the appropriate dwell time.

25.6 Add URL dialog box



Allows you to select a map for creating a link to another map.

Allows you to add an Internet address (URL) to your system. You can add this Internet address to the Logical Tree as a document. The user can display an Internet page in his Operator Client.

Name:

Type a display name for the URL.

Type the URL.

Select Map for Link dialog box 25.7

Maps and Structure > Select a map folder in the Logical Tree > On the map, right-click and click Create Link



Click another map to select.

Select

Click to insert the link to the selected map.

Schedules page 26



Main window >

Allows you to configure Recording Schedules and Task Schedules.



Click to rename the selected Recording or Task Schedule.

Recording Schedules

Displays the Recording Schedules Tree. Select an entry for configuring.

Task Schedules

Displays the Task Schedules Tree. Select an entry for configuring.

Click to add a new Task Schedule.

Delete

Click to delete the selected Task Schedule.

26.1 Recording Schedules page



> Select an item in the Recording Schedules tree Allows you to configure Recording Schedules.

Weekdavs

Click to display the Schedule Table for weekdays. The time periods of all configured Recording Schedules are displayed.

Drag the pointer to select the time periods for the selected schedule. All selected cells get the color of the selected schedule.

The 24 hours of the day are displayed horizontally. Every hour is divided into 4 cells. One cell represents 15 minutes.

Holidavs

Click to display the Schedule Table for holidays.

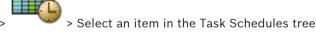
Exception Days

Click to display the Schedule Table for exception days.

Click to display a dialog box for adding the required holidays or exception days.

Click to display a dialog box for removing holidays or exception days.

26.2 Task Schedules page



Allows you to configure the available Task Schedules. You can configure a standard or a recurring pattern.

Standard

Click to display the Schedule Table for configuring standard Task Schedules. If you configure a Standard Pattern, no Recurring Pattern is valid for the selected schedule.

Recurring

Click to display the Schedule Table for configuring a recurring pattern for the selected Task Schedule. For example, you configure a schedule for every second Tuesday of every month or for the 4th of July of every year. If you configure a recurring pattern, no standard pattern is valid for the selected Task Schedule.

Weekdays

Click to display the Schedule Table for weekdays.

Drag the pointer to select the time periods for the selected schedule. The selected cells are displayed in the color of the selected schedule.

The 24 hours of the day are displayed horizontally. Every hour is divided into 4 cells. One cell represents 15 minutes.

Holidays

Click to display the Schedule Table for holidays.

Exception Days

Click to display the Schedule Table for exception days.

Click to clear the time periods of all available days (weekdays, holidays, exception days).

Select All

Click to select the time periods of all available days (weekdays, holidays, exception days).

Add...

Click to display a dialog box for adding the required holidays or exception days.

Delete...

Click to display a dialog box for deleting holidays or exception days.

Recurrence Pattern

Click the frequency with which you want the Task Schedule to recur (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Yearly) and then select the corresponding options.

Day Pattern

Drag the pointer to select the time period(s) for the recurring pattern.

Cameras and Recording page 27



Main window >

Cameras and Recording

Displays the Camera Table page or a Recording Table page.

Allows you to configure camera properties and recording settings.

Allows you to filter the cameras that are displayed according to their type.



Click to copy recording settings from one Recording Schedule to another.



Click to display the Stream Quality Settings dialog box.



Click to display the **Scheduled Recording Settings** dialog box.



Click to display the dialog box for configuring a selected PTZ camera.



Displays all available cameras regardless of their storage device.







Click to filter the displayed cameras according to their storage device.







Displays the corresponding Camera Table. No recording settings are available because these cameras are not recorded in Bosch VMS.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by $^{\times}$. Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click ...

27.1 Cameras page



Cameras and Recording > Click a recording device, for example



Displays various information on the cameras available in your Bosch VMS. Allows you to change the following camera properties:

- Camera name
- Assignment of an audio source
- Logical number
- PTZ control, if available
- Live quality (VRM and Live / Local Storage)
- Recording settings profile
- Minimum and maximum storage time

Click a column title to sort the table by this column.

Encoder

Displays the device type.

Camera

Displays the name of the camera.

Network Address

Displays the IP address of the camera.

Location

Displays the location of the camera. If the camera is not assigned to a location yet,

Unassigned Location is displayed.

Number

Click a cell to edit the logical number that the camera received automatically when it was detected. If you enter an already used number, a corresponding error message is displayed. The logical number is "free" again when the camera is removed.

Audio

Click a cell to assign an audio source to the camera.

If an alarm occurs with low priority and with a camera that has audio configured, this audio signal is played even when an alarm with higher priority is currently being displayed. But this is only true, if the high priority alarm has no audio configured.

Stream 1 - Codec / Stream 2 - Codec (only VRM and Local Storage)

Click a cell to select the desired codec for encoding the stream.

The following entries are available:

- MPEG-4 SH++ (only for encoders that do not support H.264) Classic codec for MPEG-4 encoding.
- H.264 BP+ (only for VIPX and ARM)

Codec for H.264 encoding with the Baseline+ Profile optimized for low bit rates. Use for live viewing with VIPX.

Note: If live video is to be displayed on a VIPX Decoder, select H.264 BP+.

- H.264 MP (only for VIPX)
 - Codec for H.264 encoding with the Main Profile optimized for efficient encoding. Use for recording.
- H.264 MP Low Latency (only for ARM)
 - Codec for H.264 encoding with the Main Profile optimized for low bit rates and efficient encoding. Use for live viewing and recording.

For ARM: Use H.264 MP Low Latency for both live viewing and for recording.

Stream 1 - Quality / Stream 2 - Quality

Select the desired quality of the stream used for live or recording. You configure quality settings in the Stream Quality Settings dialog box.

Live Video (only VRM and Live Only / Local Storage)

Click a cell to select the stream for a VRM or a local storage / live only encoder.

Recording - Device Family

Displays the name of the device family to which the selected camera belongs.

Recording - Setting (only VRM and Local Storage)

Click a cell to select the required recording setting. You configure the available recording settings in the Scheduled Recording Settings dialog box.



(Only visible when you click



Select a check box to activate PTZ control.

Note:

For port settings refer to COM1, page 200.





Click a cell to specify which encoder serial port is used for PTZ control. For a PTZ camera connected to a Bosch Allegiant system, you can select Allegiant. For such a camera you do not need to use a trunk line.

Protocol (Only visible when you click



Click a cell to select the appropriate protocol for the PTZ control.

PTZ Address (Only visible when you click



Type the address number for the PTZ control.

Storage Min Time [days] (only VRM and Local Storage)

Click a cell to edit the minimum number of days that video data from this camera is retained. Recordings younger than this number of days are not deleted automatically.

Storage Max Time [days] (only VRM and Local Storage)

Click a cell to edit the maximum number of days that video data from this camera is retained. Only recordings older than this number of days are deleted automatically.

27.2 Scheduled Recording Settings dialog box (only VRM and Local Storage)







Allows you to configure schedule-dependent recording settings for each available device family. A device family is available when at least one encoder of this device family has been added to the Device Tree. In the Cameras table, you assign such a recording setting to each camera.

You use the Recording Schedules configured on the **Schedules** page.

Note: Switching on or off the normal recording is valid for all device families.

Available Recording Settings

Select a pre-defined recording setting to change its properties. You can add or delete a userdefined setting.

Name:

Type in a name for the new recording setting.

Select the desired device family to configure the recording settings valid for this device family.

For the selected device family, select a Recording Schedule to configure the recording settings.

Recording:

Switch on or off the normal recording (continuous and prealarm).

Recording Mode

Select the desired recording mode.

The following items are available:

Continuous

Prealarm

Stream:

Select the desired stream used for normal recording.

Note: It depends on the device family which streams are available.

Quality:

Select the desired stream quality used for normal recording. The available quality settings are configured in the Stream Quality Settings dialog box.

Duration

Enter the desired recording time before an alarm. You enter the time in the format hh.mm.ss.

Note: Only enabled when Prealarm is selected.

Alarm Recording:

Allows you to switch on or off the alarm recording for this camera.

Motion Alarm:

Allows you to switch on or off alarm recording triggered by motion.

Select the stream used for alarm recording.

Note: It depends on the device family which streams are available.

Select the desired stream quality used for alarm recording. The available quality settings are configured in the Stream Quality Settings dialog box.

Only for CPP: When you select the **No modification** entry, alarm recording uses the same quality as used for continuous/prealarm recording. We recommend using the **No modification** entry. When you select a stream quality for alarm recording, only the values for image encoding interval and target bit rate are modified according to the settings in this stream quality. The other quality settings are used that are configured in the quality setting assigned to the continuous/prealarm recording.

Duration

Enter the desired alarm recording time. You enter the time in the format hh.mm.ss.

27.3 Recording settings pages (NVR only)



Cameras and Recording >



> Click a Recording Schedule tab



Allows you to configure the recording settings for all encoders assigned to your system's NVR. The displayed Recording Schedules are configured in **Schedules**.

Only those columns are described that are not part of a Camera Table.

Click a column title to sort the table by this column.

Continuous Recording

In the Quality column, click a cell to disable recording or to select the stream quality of stream 1.

In the discolumn, select a check box to activate audio.

Live/Pre-event Recording

In the Quality column, click a cell to select the stream quality of the live view (required for instant playback) and the pre-event recording (required for motion and alarm recording) mode of stream 2. If dual streaming is active on this encoder, you can select stream 1 to use for live or pre-event recording.

In the quality column, select a check box to activate audio.

Motion Recording

In the Quality column, click a cell to disable recording or to select the stream quality of stream 1.

In the column, click a cell to activate audio.

In the Pre-event [s] column, click a cell to select the recording time before the motion event in seconds.

In the Post-event [s] column, click a cell to select the recording time after the motion event in

Alarm Recording

In the Quality column, click a cell to select the stream quality of stream 1.

To enable alarm recording, configure a corresponding alarm.

In the quality column, select a check box to activate audio.

In the Pre-event [s] column, click a cell to select the time before the alarm in seconds.

In the **Post-event [s]** column, click a cell to select the time after the alarm in seconds.

27.4 Stream Quality Settings dialog box



Cameras and Recording >

Allows you to configure stream quality profiles that you can later assign to the recording modes.

A stream quality combines video resolution, frame rate, maximum bandwidth, and video compression.



Click to add a new stream quality.

Click to delete a selected stream quality. You cannot delete the default recording settings.

Name:

Displays the name of the stream quality. When you add a new stream quality, you can change the name.

SD video resolution:

Select the desired video resolution. For an HD quality you configure the SD quality of stream 2.

Image encoding interval:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

The system calculates the corresponding values for IPS (PAL and NTSC).

With the image encoding interval you configure the interval at which images are encoded and transmitted. If 1 is entered, all images are encoded. Entering 4 means that only every fourth image is encoded, the following three images are skipped - this can be particularly advantageous with low bandwidths. The lower the bandwidth the higher this value should be to achieve best-quality video.

Target bit rate [Kbps]:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

You can limit the data rate for the encoder to optimize usage of bandwidth in your network. The target data rate should be set according to the desired picture quality for typical scenes with no excessive motion.

For complex images or frequent changes of image content due to frequent movements, this limit can be temporarily exceeded up to the value you enter in the Maximum bit rate [Kbps]: field.

Maximum bit rate [Kbps]:

Move the slider or type the appropriate value.

With the maximum bit rate you configure the maximum transmission speed which cannot be exceeded.

You set a bit rate limit to be able to reliably determine the appropriate disk space for storage of the video data.

Depending on the video quality settings for the I- and P-Frames, this fact can result in individual images being skipped.

The value entered here must be at least 10% higher than the value entered in the **Target bit** rate [Kbps]: field. If the value entered here is too low, it will automatically be adjusted.

I-Frame Distance

This parameter allows you to set the intervals in which the I-Frames are coded. Click Automatic, to insert I-Frames as necessary. An entry of 1 indicates that I-Frames are continuously generated. An entry of 2 indicates that only every second image is an I-Frame, and 3 only every third image etc. The I-Frames in between are coded as P-Frames.

Frame Quality Level

Here you can set a value between 0 and 100 for both the I-Frames and the P-Frames. The lowest value results in the highest quality and the lowest frame refresh rate. The highest value results in the highest frame refresh rate and the lowest image quality.

The lower the available transmission bandwidth, the higher adjust the quality level to maintain high quality of the video.

Note:

You adjust the video quality dependent on the motion and level of detail in the video. If you check the Automatic check boxes, the optimum relationship between motion and image definition is automatically adjusted.

VIP X1600 XFM4 Settings

Allows you to configure the following H.264 settings for the VIP X 1600 XFM4 encoder module. H.264 deblocking filter: Select to improve visual quality and prediction performance by smoothing the sharp edges.

CABAC: Select to activate high efficient compression. Uses a large amount of processing power.

27.5 PTZ Settings dialog box

Cameras and Recording >

First configure the port settings of your PTZ camera before you can configure the PTZ camera settings. Otherwise the PTZ control is not working in this dialog box.

You set predefined positions and auxiliary commands.

Allows you to configure a PTZ camera.





Click to save the predefined position or command.



Click to rename the predefined position or command.



Click to remove the predefined position or command.

Predefined Positions tab

Click to display the table with the predefined positions.

Displays the number of the predefined position.

Click a cell to edit the name of the predefined position.

Aux Commands tab

Click to display the table with the auxiliary commands.

Displays the number of the auxiliary command.

Click a cell to edit the name of the command.

Code

Click a cell to edit the command's code.

28 **Events page**



Main window >

Displays the Event Tree with all available events and an Event Configuration Table for each event. The events are grouped by their type, for example, all camera recording events like continuous recording or alarm recording are grouped under Recording Mode.

The available events are grouped beyond their corresponding devices. A state change of a

device is displayed beyond



All other events are displayed under device

dependant groups as



You can configure for each event:

- Trigger an alarm according to a schedule (not available for all events)
- Log the event according to a schedule. An event is displayed in the Event List of the Operator Client if it is logged.
- Execute a Command Script according to a schedule (not available for all events) If the event occurs, your settings are executed.

You can create a Compound Event which combines several events with Boolean expressions.

Click a tree item to display the corresponding Event Configuration Table.



Click to duplicate an event. Use it to generate multiple alarms for a certain event.



Click to delete a duplicated or a Compound Event.



Click to rename the selected Compound Event.

Click to display a dialog box for creating Compound Events using Boolean expressions of other events (maximum 10).

Compound Events are added to the Event Configuration Table.



Click to edit the selected Compound Event.



Click to display a dialog box for creating and editing Command Scripts.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by $^{\times}$. Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

Debounce Settings tab

Note: For some events the Debounce Settings tab is not available due to technical limitations. Allows you to configure debounce settings for the selected event.

Debounce Time:

During the entered time period all further events are ignored.

Event State Priority:

For an event state you can assign a priority setting.

Edit Priorities

Click to display a dialog box for configuring a priority setting.

Add Setting

Click to add a row for configuring a debounce setting that is deviating from the debounce settings for all devices.

Remove Setting

Click to remove a selected row. To select a row click the left row header.

Settings tab

Device

Displays the name of the device or schedule.

Network

Displays the IP address of the corresponding IP device.

Trigger Alarm

Click a cell to select a Recording or Task Schedule for triggering an alarm.

Select **Always** if you want the alarm to be triggered independently from the point in time.

Select **Never** if you do not want the alarm to be triggered.

Log

In the **Schedule** column, click a cell to select a Recording or Task Schedule for logging. Select **Always** if you want the event to be logged independently from the point in time.

Select **Never** if you do not want the event to be logged.

Script

In the **Script** column, click a cell to select a Command Script.

In the **Schedule** column, click a cell to select a Recording or Task Schedule for executing a Command Script.

Select **Always** if you want the Command Script to be executed independently from the point in time.

Select **Never** if you do not want the Command Script to be executed.

28.1 Command Script Editor dialog box







Main window >

Allows you to create and edit Command Scripts.



Click to save the changed settings.



Click to restore the saved settings.



Click to check the code of a script.



Click to create a scriptlet file.



Click to delete a scriptlet file.



Click to display a dialog box for importing a script file.



Click to display a dialog box for exporting a script file.



 $^{
left}$ $^{
left}$ Click to convert an existing script to the other available script language. All existing script text is deleted.



Click to display the Online Help for Bosch VMS Script API.



Click to display the Online Help for Bosch VMS.



Click to close the **Command Script Editor** dialog box.

Create Compound Event / Edit Compound Event dialog box 28.2







Main window >

Allows you to create or modify a Compound Event.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by . Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

Event name:

Type the required name for the Compound Event.

Event States:

Select the state change that shall be part of a Compound Event.

Objects:

Select one or more of the available objects of the selected event state. This state and the selected object appear in the Compound Event Tree, as immediate child of the root operator.

Compound Event:

Allows you to build compound events in the Compound Event Tree. All immediate children of a Boolean operator (AND, OR) are combined by this operator.

Select Script Language dialog box 28.3



Allows you to set the script language for your Command Scripts.

You cannot change the script language for existing Command Scripts.

Script Language:

Select the required script language.

28.4 Edit Priorities of Event Type dialog box

Main window > Events > Debounce Settings tab > Edit Priorities button

You can configure priorities for the different state changes of an event type if applicable, for example Virtual Input Closed and Virtual Input Opened. A state change with higher priority overrides the debounce time of another state change with lower priority.

Name of Priority:

Type in a name for the priority setting.

State Value

Displays the names of the event states of the select event.

State Priority

Enter the desired priority. 1=highest priority, 10=lowest priority.

28.5 Select Devices dialog box

Select

Select the check box for the desired entry and click **OK** to add a row in the **Devices with Deviating Debounce Settings** table.

29 Alarms page



Main window >

Alarms

Displays the Event Tree and an Alarm Configuration Table for each event. Only the events configured on the **Events** page are displayed.

In the tables you configure for each event how an alarm triggered by this event is displayed and which cameras are recorded and displayed when this alarm occurs.

Some events are configured as alarms per default, e.g., a system error.

For the following events you cannot configure an alarm:

- Change of a recording mode
- Change of an alarm state
- Most of the user actions, e.g. PTZ action



Click to display the **Resource Manager** dialog box.



Displays a dialog box to set alarm settings valid for this Management Server.

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by A. Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click ...

▶ Click a tree item to display the corresponding Alarm Configuration Table.

Device

Displays the device of the event condition selected in the Events Tree.

Network Address

Displays the IP address of the corresponding IP device.

Alarm Identity

In the **Priority** column, click in a cell to type the alarm priority for the selected alarm (**100** is low priority, **1** is high priority). In the **Title** column, click in a cell to type the title of the alarm to be displayed in Bosch VMS, for example in the Alarm List. In the **Color** column, click in a cell to display a dialog box for selecting a color for the alarm to be displayed in the Operator Client, for example in the Alarm List.

Alarm Image Panes

In one of the **1-5** columns, click ... in a cell to display a dialog box for selecting a camera. You can only select a camera that was added to the Logical Tree in **Maps and Structure**. You can configure the number of available Alarm Image panes in the **Alarm Settings** dialog box.

In the **Audio File** column, click ... in a cell to display a dialog box for selecting an audio file that is played in case of an alarm.

Alarm Options

Click ... in a cell to display the **Alarm Options** dialog box.

29.1 Alarm Settings dialog box







Alarm Settings tab

Max. Image panes per alarm:

Enter the maximum count of Alarm Image panes to be displayed in case of an alarm.

Auto-clear time:

Enter the number of seconds until an alarm is automatically cleared.

This only applies for alarms that are set to Auto-clear in the Alarms page.

Manual alarm recording time:

Only valid for NVR recordings.

Enter the number of minutes for the duration of alarm recording that a user can start manually in the Operator Client.

The user can stop the manual recording before this time is elapsed.

Analog Monitor Groups tab

Display order in case of same alarm priority:

Select the desired entry for sorting alarms of the same priority according to their time stamp.

Show blank screen

Click to configure that on a monitor not being used for alarm display nothing is shown.

Continue live display

Click to configure that on a monitor not being used for alarm display live display is shown.

29.2 **Select Image Pane Content dialog box**









Alarms > or Alarm Image Panes column > Click ... in

one of the 1-5 columns

Main window >

Allows you to select the Logical tree item that is displayed and recorded (if the item is a camera) in case of the selected alarm.



Notice!

A map displayed in an Alarm Image pane is optimized for display and contains only the initial view of the basic .dwf file.

Search Item

Enter text to find an item in the Logical Tree.

Find

Click to find the camera with the entered search text in its description.

Click to determine that the live image of the camera is displayed in case of an alarm.

Instant playback

Click to determine that instant playback of the camera is displayed.

The rewind time for instant playback is configured in the Alarm Settings dialog box, see Alarm Settings dialog box, page 225.

Pause playback

Select the check box to display the alarm instant playback camera with paused instant playback. The user can start instant playback if needed.

Record this camera

Select the check box to enable alarm recording for this camera in case of an alarm. If an alarm is triggered, this camera is recorded in alarm recording quality. The duration of the recording is the duration of the alarm state plus pre- and post-alarm time. This setting directly changes the setting for alarm recording in the Alarm Options dialog box and vice versa.

29.3 Select Resource dialog box





Main window > column > Click ...

Allows you to select an audio file that is played in case of an alarm.

Click to play the selected audio file.

Click to pause the selected audio file.

Stop

Click to stop the selected audio file.

Manage...

Click to display the Resource Manager dialog box.

29.4 Alarm Options dialog box



Main window >







Allows you to configure the following settings for alarms:

- Cameras that start recording in case of an alarm
- Enabling protection for these alarm recordings (only for NVR recording)
- Triggering PTZ commands in case of alarm
- Notifications that are sent in case of an alarm
- Workflow that has to be processed in case of an alarm
- Assigning cameras that are displayed in analog monitor groups in case of an alarm.

Cameras tab

Nr

Displays the camera number as configured on the Cameras and Recording page.

Displays the camera name as configured on the **Cameras and Recording** page.

Displays the location as configured on the **Maps and Structure** page.

Record

Select a check box to enable alarm recording for this camera in case of an alarm. If an alarm is triggered, this camera is recorded in alarm recording quality. The duration of the recording is the duration of the alarm state plus pre- and post-alarm time. This setting directly changes the setting for alarm recording in the Select Image Pane Content dialog box and vice versa.

Protect Recording (only for NVR recording)

Select a check box to protect the alarm recording of this camera.

Auxiliary Command

Click a cell to select an auxiliary command to be executed in case of an alarm.

Entries in this list are only available for a PTZ camera.

Predefined Position

Click a cell to select a predefined position to be set in case of an alarm.

Entries in this list are only available for a PTZ camera.

Notifications tab

Select the check box to send an e-mail in case of an alarm.

Server:

Select an e-mail server.

Recipients:

Type the e-mail addresses of the recipients separated by commas (example: name@provider.com).

SMS

Select the check box to send an SMS in case of an alarm.

Select an SMS device.

Recipients:

Type the mobile numbers of the recipients.

Text:

Type the text of the notification.

Select the check box to add the corresponding information to the notification text.

Note: For an e-mail the date of the time zone of the Management Server is used.

Workflow tab

Record only alarm

Select the check box to specify that the camera is only recorded and not being displayed in case of this alarm. This check box is only active if the **Record** check box on the **Cameras** tab is selected.

Auto-clear alarm after configured time ('Alarm Settings' dialog box)

Select the check box to specify that this alarm is automatically cleared.

Auto-clear alarm when event state changes back to normal

Select the check box to specify that this alarm is automatically cleared when the event that triggers this alarm changes its state. The alarm will not be cleared automatically if it is accepted and unaccepted.

Show action plan

Select the check box to enable the workflow that must be processed in case of an alarm.

Resources...

Click to display the Resource Manager dialog box. Select a document with a description of the corresponding workflow.

Display a comment box

Select the check box to enable displaying a comment box in case of an alarm. In this comment box the user can type comments on the alarm.

Force the operator to process the workflow

Select the check box to force the user to process the workflow. If selected, the user cannot clear the alarm until he has entered a comment on the alarm.

Execute the following Client Script when alarm is accepted:

Select a Client Command Script that is executed automatically, when the user accepts an alarm.

Analog Monitor Group tab

1...10

In a numbered column, click a cell and select a camera from the Logical Tree. This camera will be displayed in the assigned monitor in case of an alarm.

Clear table

Click to remove all camera assignments to analog monitor groups.

Alarm title

Select the check box to configure that the title of the alarm is displayed on the analog monitors as an on-screen display.

Alarm time

Select the check box to configure that the time of the alarm is displayed on the analog monitors as an on-screen display.

Alarm date

Select the check box to configure that the date of the alarm is displayed on the analog monitors as an on-screen display.

Alarm camera name

Select the check box to configure that the name of the alarm camera is displayed on the analog monitors as an on-screen display.

Alarm camera number

Select the check box to configure that the number of the alarm camera is displayed on the analog monitors as an on-screen display.

Only on 1st monitor

Select the check box to configure that the title and the time of the alarm is displayed only on the first monitor of the analog monitor group as an on-screen display.

30 **User Groups page**



Main window >

User Groups

The following user group is available by default:

Admin Group (user name: Admin)

Allows you to configure user groups, Enterprise User Groups and Enterprise Access.

User Groups tab

Click to display the pages available for configuring the rights of the standard user group.

Enterprise User Groups tab (only available with valid Enterprise license)

Click to display the pages available for configuring the permissions of an Enterprise User Group.

Enterprise Access tab (only available with valid Enterprise license)

Click to display the pages available for adding and configuring Enterprise Access.



Click to delete a selected entry.



Click to add a new group or account.

Click to add a new user to the selected user group. Change the default user name if desired.



Click to add a new dual authorization group.



Click to add a new logon pair for dual authorization.

Displays a dialog box for copying permissions from a selected user group to another user group.



Click to display the pages available for configuring the permissions of this group.



Click to display the page available for configuring the properties of this user.



Click to display the page available for configuring the properties of this logon pair.

Click to display the pages available for configuring the permissions of this dual authorization group.

Permissions on an Enterprise System

For an Enterprise System you configure the following permissions:

- Operating permissions of Operator Client defining the user interface for operating in the Enterprise System, for example the user interface of the alarm monitor.
 - Use an Enterprise User Group. Configure it on the Enterprise Management Server.
- Device permissions that should be available for operating in an Enterprise Management Server are defined on each Management Server.
 - Use Enterprise Accounts. Configure it on each Management Server.

Permissions on a single Management Server

For managing the access to one of the Management Servers, use the standard user group. You configure all permissions on this Management Server in this user group.

You can configure dual authorization user groups for standard user groups and for Enterprise User Groups.

Туре	Contains	Available configuration settings	Where do you configure?
User group	Users	- Operating and device permissions	- Management Server
Enterprise User Group	Users	 Operating permissions Per Management Server: Name of the corresponding Enterprise Access Accounts with logon credentials 	– Enterprise Management Server
Enterprise Access	-	Device permissionsAccount password	- Management Server
Dual authorization user group	User groups	- See user groups	- See user groups
Enterprise dual authorization	Enterprise User Groups	- See Enterprise User Groups	– See Enterprise User Groups

Table 30.1: User groups

Type in a string and press the ENTER key to filter the displayed items. Only items containing the string and their corresponding parent items (only in trees) are displayed. The count of filtered items and the total count of items is provided. An

active filter is indicated by . Enclose strings with double quotes to find them exactly, for example "Camera 1" exactly filters the cameras with this name, not camera 201.

To cancel filtering, click X.

New User Group/Enterprise Account dialog box 30.1



Allows you to create a standard user group, an Enterprise User Group or an Enterprise Account.

The Enterprise User Groups tab is only available if the appropriate license is available and if



Devices > Enterprise

one or more Management Server computers are configured in

System > Server List.

Name:

Type in a name for the group or account.

Description:

Type in a description for the group or account.

For Enterprise Accounts:

Password:

Type in a password.

Confirm Password:

Enter the new password again.

Related Topics

Main window >

Creating a group or account, page 118

30.2 User Group Properties page





> User Group Properties tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Operating

Permissions tab > User Group Properties tab

Allows you to configure the following settings for the selected user group:

- Logon schedule
- Association of an LDAP user group

Description:

Type an informative description for the user group.

Language:

Select the language of the Operator Client (both NVR and VRM).

Logon schedule:

Select a task or recording schedule. The users of the selected group can only log on to the system in the times defined by this schedule.

Associated LDAP group:

Type the name of the LDAP user group that you want to use for your system.

You can also double-click an item in the LDAP Groups: list.

LDAP Groups:

Displays the available LDAP user groups. You configure LDAP groups in the **LDAP Server Settings** dialog box.

Search for Groups

Click to display the available LDAP user groups in the **LDAP Groups:** list. To find user groups you must make the appropriate settings in the **LDAP Server Settings** dialog box.

Settings

Click to display the LDAP Server Settings dialog box.

Associate Group

Click to associate the selected LDAP group with this user group.

Clear Group

Click to clear the Associated LDAP group: field. The association of the LDAP group to the Bosch VMS user group is removed.

30.3 User Properties page



Main window >

User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



If you change the password for a user or delete a user while this user is logged on, this user can still continue working with Operator Client after password change or deletion. If after password change or deletion the connection to Management Server is interrupted (for example after activating the configuration), the user cannot automatically reconnect to the Management Server again without logoff/logon at Operator Client.

Allows you to configure a new user in a standard user group or in an Enterprise User Group.

Full name:

Type the full name of the user.

Description:

Type an informative description for the user.

Enter new password:

Type the password for the new user.

Confirm password:

Type the new password again.

Apply

or

Click to apply the settings.

30.4 Add New Dual Authorization Group dialog box



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab



Allows to create a dual authorization for a standard user group or for an Enterprise User Group.

For Enterprise Access, a dual authorization is not available.

Name:

Type in a name for the group.

Description:

Type in description for the group.

See also

- Creating a dual authorization group, page 119

30.5 Logon Pair Properties page





Main window > User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Dual Authorization Group >

Allows you to modify a pair of user groups to a dual authorization group. The users of the first user group are the users that must log on in the first dialog box for logging on, the users of the second user group confirm the logon.

Select Logon Pair

In each list, select a user group.

Force dual authorization

Select the check box to force each user to log on only together with a user of the second user group.

30.6 Select User Groups dialog box





Dual Authorization Group >

Allows you to add a pair of user groups to a dual authorization group. The users of the first user group are the users that must log on in the first dialog box for logging on, the users of the second user group confirm the logon.

Select Logon Pair

In each list, select a user group.

Force dual authorization

Select the check box to force each user to log on only together with a user of the second user group.

30.7 Camera Permissions page



ain window > User Groups > User Groups tab >



> Device Permissions tab >

Camera Permissions tab

or



User Groups > Enterprise Access tab >



> Device Permissions

tab > Camera Permissions tab

Allows you to configure the access rights for the features of a selected camera or camera group for the selected user group.

If new components are added, camera permissions must be configured afterwards.

You can recall the access to a camera on the Logical Tree page.

Camera

Displays the camera name as configured on the Cameras and Recording page.

Location

Displays the location of the camera as configured on the **Maps and Structure** page.

Access

Select a check box to allow access to this camera.

Live Video

Select a check box to allow using live video.

Live Audio

Select a check box to allow using live audio.

Manual Recording

Select a check box to allow manual recording (alarm recording).

You can select or clear this check box only when the manual alarm recording is enabled on the **Operator Features** page.

Playback Video

Select a check box to allow using playback video.

You can select or clear this check box only when playback is enabled on the Operator

Features page.

Playback Audio

Select a check box to allow using playback audio.

You can select or clear this check box only when playback is enabled on the **Operator**

Features page.

Metadata

Select a check box to allow displaying metadata.

You can select or clear this check box only when the display of metadata is enabled on the **Operator Features** page.

Export

Select a check box to allow exporting video data.

You can select or clear this check box only when the export of video data is enabled on the **Operator Features** page.

PTZ

Select a check box to allow using the control of this camera.

You can select or clear this check box only when the PTZ control of a camera is enabled on the **Operator Features** page.

Aux

Select a check box to allow executing auxiliary commands.

You can select or clear this check box only when the PTZ control of a camera is enabled on the Operator Features page.

Set Presets

Select a check box to allow the user to set prepositions of this PTZ camera.

You can select or clear this check box only when the PTZ control of a camera is enabled on the Operator Features page.

Reference Image

Select a check box to allow updating the reference image of this camera.

30.8 **Control Priorities**



or



Control Priorities

Move the appropriate slider to the right to decrease the priority for acquiring PTZ controls and Bosch Allegiant trunk lines. A user with a high priority can lock the PTZ controls or the control of a trunk line for users with lower priorities. You set the timeout for locking PTZ control on the **Timeout in min.** field. The default setting is 1 minute.

Timeout in min.

Enter the time period in minutes.

See also

Configuring various priorities, page 123

30.9 Copy User Group Permissions dialog box



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >

Allows you to select user group permissions to be copied to selected user groups.

Copy from:

Displays the selected user group. Its permissions are to be copied to another user group.

Settings to Copy

Select a check box to select the desired user group permissions for copying.

Copy to:

Select a check box to specify the user group where to copy the selected user group permissions to.

30.10 **Decoder Permissions page**

Main window > User Groups > User Groups tab > Permissions tab

٥r



tab > Camera Permissions tab

Allows you to configure the decoders that the users of this group have access to.

Displays the available decoders.

Click the check box to give the user group access to this decoder.

30.11 **Events and Alarms page**



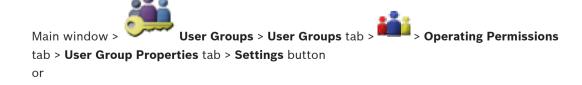
User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > tab > Events and Alarms tab

Allows to configure the permissions for the Events Tree, i.e. you set the events the user group is authorized or not authorized to use.

For each event there is at least one device. For example, for the Video Loss event the available cameras are the devices. For an event like Backup Finished the corresponding device is Time **Controlled Backup**. Hence, a device can be a software process.

- Expand a tree item and click the required check boxes for enabling the events. In the Camera column, select the check box to enable the events of all the available devices. This ensures that the user group gets events from devices that this user group has no access to. The access to the devices is configured on the Logical Tree page and on the Camera Permissions page.
- 2. To enable or disable all events at once, select or clear the **Events and Alarms** check box.

30.12 LDAP Server Settings dialog box





User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Permissions tab > User Group Properties tab > Settings button

You enter the LDAP server settings that are configured outside of Bosch VMS. You will need the assistance of your IT administrator who set up the LDAP server for the following entries. All fields are mandatory except the fields in the **Test User / User Group** group box.



LDAP Server Settings

LDAP Server:

Type the name of the LDAP server.

Type the port number of the LDAP server (default unencrypted: 389, encrypted: 636)

Secure connection

Select the check box to activate encrypted data transmission.

LDAP basis for user:

Type the unique name (DN = distinguished name) of the LDAP path in which you can search for a user. Example for a DN of the LDAP

basis:CN=Users,DC=Security,DC=MyCompany,DC=com

Filter for user:

Select a filter used to search for a unique user name. Examples are predefined. Replace %username% with the actual user name.

LDAP basis for group:

Type the unique name of the LDAP path in which you can search for groups.

Example for a DN of the LDAP basis: CN=Users,DC=Security,DC=MyCompany,DC=com

Filter for group member search:

Select a filter used to search for a group member.

Examples are predefined. Replace %usernameDN% with the actual user name and his DN.

Proxy User

User name (DN):

Type the unique name of the proxy user. This user is required to allow the users of this Bosch VMS user group to access the LDAP server.

Password:

Type the proxy user password.

Click to test whether the proxy user has access to the LDAP server.

Test User / User Group

The entries in this group box are not saved after clicking **OK**. They only serve for testing.

User name:

Type the name of a test user. Omit the DN.

Password:

Type the test user password.

Test User

Click to test whether the combination of user name and password is correct.

Group (DN):

Type the unique group name with which the user is associated.

Test Group

Click to test the association of the user with the group.

Group search filter:

Do not leave this field empty. If there is no entry, you cannot assign an LDAP group to a Bosch VMS user group.

Select a filter to find a user group.

Examples are predefined.

30.13 Credentials page

Main window > User Groups > Enterprise Access tab > Credentials tab

Configure the credentials of an Enterprise Account on a Management Server.

You configure Enterprise Access on each Management Server that is member of your Enterprise System. The Enterprise Management Server uses this credential to grant access to the devices of this Management Server for the Operator Client that logs on as a user of an Enterprise User Group.

item as desired. This is the name of the Enterprise Account.

Description:

Type in a description for this Enterprise Account.

Enter new password: / Confirm password:

Type in and confirm the password for this Management Server.

See also

New User Group/Enterprise Account dialog box, page 230

30.14 **Logical Tree page**



or



Allows you to configure the Logical Tree for each user group.

Select a check box to give the users of the selected user group access to the corresponding devices.

You can recall the access to a camera on the Camera Permissions page.

30.15 Operator Features page





Allows you to configure various permissions for the selected user group.

PTZ control of dome cameras

Select the check box to allow the control of a camera.

Control Priorities page: In the Control Priorities field, you can set the priority for acquiring the control of a camera.

Allegiant trunk lines

Select the check box to allow accessing Bosch Allegianttrunk lines.

Control Priorities page: In the Control Priorities field, you can set the priority for acquiring Bosch Allegiant trunk lines.

Print and save video data

Select the check box to allow printing and saving video data.

Alarm processing

Select the check box to allow alarm processing.

Interrupt the Windows Screen Saver for incoming alarms

Select the check box to ensure that an incoming alarm is displayed even when the screen saver is active. If the screen saver requires a user name and password for being interrupted, this setting has no effect.

Alarm display

Select the check box to allow alarm display. If you select this option, the Alarm processing is deactivated simultaneously.

Playback

Select the check box to allow a higher priority for Playback Mode and to allow the other playback features.

If you clear this check box, the Export video files, Protect and unprotect video data, Delete video, and Access to video data that has been recorded in periods when the user group has not been allowed to logon permissions and the Live Video permissions for all available cameras on the **Camera Permissions** page are cleared and disabled.

Export video files

Select the check box to allow exporting video data.

If you clear this check box, the permissions for all available cameras on the Camera

Permissions page are disabled also.

Protect and unprotect video data

Select the check box to allow protecting video data.

Delete video

Select the check box to allow deleting video data.

Access to video data that has been recorded in periods when the user group has not been allowed to logon

Select the check box to allow accessing the described video data.

Logbook access

Select the check box to allow accessing the Logbook.

Operator event buttons

Select the check box to allow user event buttons in the Operator Client.

Close Operator Client

Select the check box to allow closing the Operator Client.

Minimize Operator Client

Select the check box to allow minimizing the Operator Client.

Audio Intercom

Select the check box to allow the user to speak on the loudspeakers of an encoder with audioin and audio-out function.

Manual Alarm Recording

Select the check box to allow manual alarm recording.

If you clear this check box, the **Metadata** permissions for all available cameras on the **Camera** Permissions page are cleared and disabled.

Access VRM Monitor

Select the check box to allow access to the VRM Monitor software.

Set reference image

Select the check box to allow updating the reference image in the Operator Client.

Set area selection for reference image

Select the check box to allow selecting the area in the camera image for updating the reference image in the Operator Client.

Display order in case of same alarm priority:

Select the appropriate value to configure the order of Alarm Image panes in the Alarm Display of the Operator Client.

Instant playback rewind time:

Enter the number of seconds for the duration of instant playback.

Repeat alarm audio:

Select the check box and enter the number of seconds after an alarm sound is repeated.

Limit access to recorded video to the last n minutes.

Select the check box to limit the access to recorded videos.

In the list, enter the number of minutes.

See also

- Configuring operating permissions, page 121

30.16 Priorities page



Main window > User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab > Operating

Permissions tab > Priorities tab

Allows you to configure the timeout for explicit PTZ locking. You can set the priorities for PTZ control and the display of incoming alarms.

Automatic Popup Behavior

Move the slider to adjust the priority value of Live Image window or Playback Image window. This value is required for incoming alarms to decide whether this alarm is automatically displayed in the Alarm Image window.

For example: If you move the slider for Live Image window to 50 and for the Playback Display to 70 and an alarm comes in with a priority of 60, the alarm is only automatically displayed if the user has Playback Display active. The alarm is not automatically displayed when the user has Live Display active.

30.17 User Interface page



Main window > User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab > Operating

Permissions tab > User Interface tab

Allows you to configure the user interface of 4 monitors used by Operator Client.

Control Monitor

Select the control monitor which displays Live Mode only.

Alarm Monitor

Select the alarm monitor which can display either Live and Alarm Mode or only Alarm Mode.

Monitor 1 - 4

In the corresponding list, select the required entry.

Image panes aspect ratio

For each monitor select the required aspect ratio for the initial startup of Operator Client. Use 16:9 for HD cameras.

Save settings when shutting down

Select the check box to activate that the system remembers the last state of the user interface when the user logs off from the Operator Client. If the check box is not selected, the Operator Client starts always with the configured user interface.

Restore Default

Click to restore the default settings of this page.

Load Custom Layout

Click to import an XML file with user interface settings.

Unload Custom Lavout

Click to display a dialog box for unloading imported interface settings.

30.18 Server Access page



User Groups > Enterprise User Groups tab >



Main window > tab

You configure the server access on an Enterprise Management Server.

You enter the name of the Enterprise Account and its password for each Management Server of your Enterprise System. This account is configured on each Management Server.

Management Server

Displays the name of the Management Server that you configured on this Enterprise Management Server.

Private Network Address

Displays the IP address or DNS name of the Management Server.

Server Number

Displays the number of the Management Server. This number is used by an IntuiKey keyboard to select the desired Management Server.

Access

Click to check when you want to grant access to the Management Server. This Management Server is now an Enterprise Management Server.

Enterprise Account

Type in the name of the Enterprise Account that has been configured on the Management Server.

Enterprise Account Password

Click to display a dialog box for typing in the password of the Enterprise Account that has been configured on the Management Server.

Server Description

Displays the descriptive text for this server.

See also

Configuring the Server List for Enterprise System, page 128

- Creating a group or account, page 118

Troubleshooting 31

This chapter contains information on how to handle known problems using Bosch VMS Configuration Client.

Problems after updating Bosch Video Management System

Issue	Cause	Solution
The NVR does not record	The connection between NVR	Reestablish the connection
after updating Bosch Video	and Management Server was	between NVR and
Management System.	lost after the update. The	Management Server.
	update can potentially have	
	changed the Bosch VMS	
	database on the Management	
	Server. The NVR must "know"	
	these changes.	

Problems during installation

Issue	Cause	Solution
Setup displays wrong characters.	The Windows language settings are not correct.	Configuring the desired language in Windows, page 246
Setup stops with a message that OPC Server cannot be installed.	OPC Server files cannot be overwritten.	Uninstall OPC Core Components Redistributable and restart Bosch VMS Setup.
The software cannot be uninstalled by executing Setup.		Start Control Panel > Add/ Remove Programs and uninstall Bosch VMS.

Problems immediately after starting the application

Issue	Cause	Solution
Bosch VMS displays the wrong language.	Windows is not switched to the desired language.	Configuring the language of Configuration Client, page 57 or Configuring the language of Operator Client, page 57
The logon dialog box of Operator Client shows the wrong language.	Although you have changed the language for Operator Client in Configuration Client, the language for the logon dialog box of Operator Client depends on the Windows language.	Configuring the desired language in Windows, page 246

Problems with display language

Issue	Cause	Solution
Some display texts in	The OS language of the	Do not change this.
Configuration Client or	computer where the	
Operator Client are in a	Management Server is	
foreign language, usually	installed, is often English.	
English.	Hence, when the Bosch VMS	
	database is generated on this	
	computer, many display texts	
	are created in English. They	
	remain unchanged regardless	
	of the Windows language of	
	an Operator Client computer.	
	To avoid such language	
	discrepancies, install	
	Management Server software	
	on a computer with the	
	desired Windows interface	
	language.	

Problems with Bosch IntuiKey keyboard

Issue	Cause	Solution
The Bosch IntuiKey keyboard	The connection to the	Reestablishing the connection
triggers an alarm and the	workstation is lost. Either the	to a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard,
softkey display displays Off	cable is damaged or	page 246
Line.	unplugged, or the workstation	
	has been reset.	

Problems with the settings in the recording control of your soundcard

Issue	Cause	Solution
Feedbacks occur when using a microphone for Intercom functionality.	In the recording control of your soundcard the microphone must be selected, not the stereo mix (or something else). Operator Client checks its configuration file during startup and changes the settings in the recording control accordingly. This configuration file contains a default entry which might not match your system configuration. This setting is restored during each start of Operator Client.	Change the setting in the configuration file of Operator Client to microphone.

Crashing Configuration Client

Issue	Cause	Solution
Configuration Client crashes.	If there are many cameras configured in an Allegiant file which are not connected to Bosch Video Management System, you can reduce this number. This avoids unnecessary system load.	See Reducing the number of Allegiant cameras, page 246.

Crashing Operator Client

Issue	Cause	Solution
Operator Client crashes.	DiBos Web client is installed and has been started on the computer where Operator	Uninstall the DiBos Web client.
	Client is installed.	

31.1 Configuring the desired language in Windows

If you want to change the display language for the setup of Bosch VMS, you must switch the language in your Windows. For activating the language settings the computer is restarted after performing the following steps.

To configure the desired language:

- Click Start, click Control Panel, and then double-click Regional and Language Options.
- 2. Click the Advanced tab, under Language for non-Unicode programs, select the desired language.
- Click OK. 3.
- In each of the next message boxes, click Yes. Your computer is restarted.

31.2 Reestablishing the connection to a Bosch IntuiKey keyboard

- Plug in the cable again or wait until the workstation is online. The Off Line message disappears.
- Press the Terminal softkey to enter Bosch VMS.

31.3 Reducing the number of Allegiant cameras

You need the Allegiant Master Control Software to edit the Allegiant file.

To reduce the number of Allegiant cameras:

- Start the Master Control Software.
- 2. Open the Allegiant file.
- Click the Camera tab. 3.
- 4. Mark the cameras that are not required.
- 5. On the Edit menu, click Delete.
- 6. Save the file. The file size remains unchanged.
- 7. Repeat the last step for monitors that you do not need. Click the Monitors tab.
- Import this file in Bosch Video Management System (see Adding devices, page 81).

Glossary

802.1x

The IEEE 802.1x standard provides a general method for authentication and authorization in IEEE-802 networks. Authentication is carried out via the authenticator, which checks the transmitted authentication information using an authentication server (see RADIUS server) and approves or denies access to the offered services (LAN, VLAN or WLAN) accordingly.

Alarm

Event that is configured to create an alarm. This is a particular situation (motion detected, doorbell rung, signal lost, etc.) that requires immediate attention. An alarm can display live video, playback video, an action plan, a web page, or a map.

Alarm Image window

Image window for displaying one or more Alarm Image panes.

Alarm List

Window in Bosch Video Management System used to display a list of active alarms.

Allegiant

Bosch family of analog matrix switching systems.

Analog monitor group

A set of analog monitors connected to decoders. The analog monitor group can be used for alarm processing in a given physical area. For example, an installation with three physically separated control rooms might have three monitor groups. The monitors in an analog monitor group are logically configured into rows and columns and can be set to full-screen or quad view.

ATM

Automatic Teller Machine

Bookmark

Used for storing a time period of live or recorded video. This allows for tagging particular scenes for later investigation. Additionally you can share your investigation results with other users by exporting a bookmark.

Bosch ATM/POS Bridge

Receives string via serial cable / COM interface and forwards these strings via Ethernet cable (TCP/IP). The strings are usually POS data or transactions from ATMs.

BRS

Bosch Recording Station. Video recording and management software.

BVIP

Bosch Video over IP. Name of a growing family of video products, cameras, encoders and decoders that communicate via IP (Internet Protocol).

CCL

Command Console Language. Set of commands that is used to control the functions of a Bosch Allegiant device.

Command Script

Macro, that the administrator can program to build an automatic action like positioning a PTZ camera or send E-mails. For that functionality Bosch Video Management System provides a specific set of commands. Command Scripts are divided into Client Scripts and Server Scripts. Client Scripts are used on client workstations to execute certain tasks that can run on a client workstation. Server Scripts are executed automatically by an event that was triggered in the system. They get arguments provided by the event like date and time. A Command Script can consist of several scriptlets. You can create a Command Script using the following scripting languages: C#, VB.Net. Command Scripts are executed in response to events or alarms automatically according to a schedule (Server Scripts only), manually from the Logical Tree, or manually from icons or on maps.

Compound Event

Combination of different events. The combination uses Boolean expressions, i.e. AND and OR. You can combine only state changes, for example the change of a connection state to disconnected or the activation of a schedule.

Debounce time

Time period starting with the occurrence of an event. During this time period usually no other event of the same type is accepted. This prevents for example that a switching sensor creates a large number of events. For events with several states, you can configure a different priority setting for each state. The following examples

help you in getting a deeper understanding of the concept of debounce time. Example 1 deals with events creating the same state: The System Info event occurs and the configured debounce time starts. During this time another System Info event occurs. This System Info event is not accepted as a new event. Example 2 deals with events creating different states with the same priority: A Motion Detected event occurs and the configured debounce time starts. During this time, the Motion Stopped event with the same priority occurs. The Motion Stopped event is not accepted as a new event. Example 3 also deals with events creating different states with the same priority: The state of a virtual input is on. The state priorities for both state changes are identical. At a specific point in time, the virtual input is switched off, the debounce time is started. During this debounce time the virtual input is switched on. This state change is not accepted as a new event because it has the same priority. After the debounce time has elapsed, the virtual input is in another state. The switch-on gets the time stamp of the end of the debounce time and no new debounce time starts. Example 4 deals with events with different priorities creating different states: The Motion Detected event occurs and the configured debounce time starts. During this time the Motion Stopped event with a higher priority occurs. The Motion Stopped event is accepted as a new event but the debounce time does not start again. Example 5 also deals with events with different priorities creating different states: The state of a virtual input is off. The state priority for switched on is "5", for switched off is "2". At a specific point in time, the virtual input is switched on (prio "5"), the debounce time is started. During this debounce time the virtual input is switched off (prio "2"). This state change is accepted as a new event because it has a higher priority. The debounce time of the first switch-on is continued. Further state changes are not accepted during this debounce time.

Decoder

Changes a digital stream to an analog stream, e.g., to display digital video on a analog monitor.

Device family

Bosch encoders / IP cameras can belong to one of the following device families: CPP-ENC, CPP3, CPP4. Each device family uses another hardware platform with different functionality. CPP4 provides extended support for H.264 and HD video resolution.

Device Tree

Hierarchical list of all the available devices in the system.

DNS

Domain Name System. A DNS server converts a URL (www.myDevice.com, for example) into an IP address on networks that use the TCP/IP protocol.

Dual authorization

Security policy that requires two different users to log on to the Operator Client. Both the users must be member of a normal Bosch Video Management System user group. This user group (or these user groups if the users are members of different user groups) must be part of a dual authorization group. A dual authorization group has its own access rights within Bosch Video Management System. This dual authorization group should have more access rights than the normal user group that the user belongs to. Example: User A is member of a user group called Group A. User B is member of Group B. Additionally a dual authorization group is configured with Group A and Group B as members. For the users of Group A, dual authorization is optional, for users of Group B it is mandatory. When user A logs on, a second dialog box for confirming the logon is displayed. In this dialog box, a second user can log on if he is available. If not, user A can continue and start the Operator Client. He then has only the access rights of Group A. When user B logs on, again a second dialog box for logging on is displayed. In this dialog box, a second user must log on. If not, user B cannot start the Operator Client.

Dual streaming

Dual streaming allows an incoming data stream to be encoded simultaneously according to two different, individually configured settings. This creates two data streams: one for live and preevent recording, the other for continuous, motion, and alarm recording.

Duplex

Term used to define the direction of data transmission between two parties. Half-duplex allows data transmission in both directions but not simultaneously. Full-duplex allows simultaneous data transmission.

DVR

Digital Video Recorder

Dwell time

Preset amount of time a camera is displayed in an Image window until the next camera is displayed during a camera sequence.

DWF

Design Web Format. Used to display technical drawings on a computer monitor.

DvnDNS

Dynamic Domain Name System. A DNS host service that holds IP addresses ready in a database. Dynamic DNS allows you to connect to the device via the Internet using the host name of the device. See DNS.

Encoder

Changes an analog stream to a digital stream, e.g., to integrate analog cameras in a digital system like Bosch Video Management System. Some encoders can have a local storage like a flash card, a USB hard disk, or they can store their video data on iSCSI devices. IP cameras have an encoder built in.

Enterprise Access

Consists of one or more Enterprise Accounts. Each Enterprise Account contains device permissions to devices of a particular Management Server.

Enterprise Account

Authorization that enables an Operator Client to connect to the devices of a Management Server being part of an Enterprise System. In an Enterprise Account, all permissions for the devices of this Management Server are configured. Operator Client can simultaneously connect to all Management Server computers that are part of this Enterprise System. This access is either controlled by the membership to an Enterprise User Group, and is controlled by the device permissions configured in the Enterprise Account for this Management Server.

Enterprise Management Server

Bosch VMS Management Server hosting the configuration of Enterprise User groups. You need one or more Enterprise User groups referring to one or more servers computers. The roles of Enterprise Management Server and Management Server can be combined in one configuration.

Enterprise System

Feature of Bosch Video Management System that allows a user of Operator Client to access multiple Management Server computers simultaneously.

Enterprise System

Feature of Bosch Video Management System that allows a user of Operator Client to access multiple Management Server computers simultaneously.

Enterprise User Group

User group that is configured on an Enterprise Management Server. Defines the users that are authorized to access multiple Management Server computers simultaneously. Defines the operating permissions available for these users.

Event

A circumstance or state that is linked to an alarm and/or an action. Events can arise from many sources such as cameras, archivers, directories, digital inputs, etc. They can include start-recording states, loss of signal states, disk full messages, user logons, digital input triggers, etc.

Failover NVR

Computer in the Bosch Video Management System environment. Takes over the tasks of a Primary NVR in case this server fails. This takeover can happen even when the Central Server is not working. Now the Failover NVR records all the cameras of the Primary NVR. When the Primary NVR is fixed and online again, the recordings are again stored on this NVR, the cameras are switched back automatically. The Failover NVR stops recording. The recordings of the down time of the Primary NVR stay on the Failover NVR.

GSM

Global System for Mobile Communication. Standard for digital mobile phones.

H.264

Standard for encoding (compressing) digital audio and video for multimedia applications. This standard includes different profiles that can be manufacturer-dependent. The following profiles are available: Baseline, Baseline+, Main Profile. Baseline (not used in Bosch Video Management System) supports 2 CIF. Baseline+ supports 4 CIF and provides a better image quality than Baseline. Main Profile supports 4 CIF and provides a high efficient compression algorithm called CABAC (Context-adaptive binary arithmetic coding). This serves for high quality encoding for storage.

Hot spot

Mouse sensitive icon in map that is configured in Configuration Client. Hot spots are cameras, relays, Command Scripts. The user uses it for localizing and selecting a device in a building.

Image pane

Used for displaying live and recorded video of a single camera, a map, or an HTML file.

Image window

Container for Image panes, structured by an Image window pattern.

Instant playback

Plays the recorded image of the selected camera in an Image pane on the live screen. The start time (number of seconds in the past, or rewind time) can be configured.

Intercom functionality

Used to talk on the loudspeakers of an encoder. This encoder must have audio-in and audio-out. The Intercom functionality can be granted per user group.

IPS

Images per second. Number of video images transmitted or recorded per second.

IQN

iSCSI Qualified Name. The initiator name in IQN format is used for provisioning addresses for both iSCSI initiators and targets. With IQN mapping you create an initiator group that controls the access to the LUNs on an iSCSI target and you write the initiator names of each encoder and the VRM into this initiator group. Only the devices whose initiator names are added to an initiator group are permitted to access a LUN. See LUN and see iSCSI.

iSCSI

Internet Small Computer System Interface. Protocol that manages storage via a TCP/IP network. iSCSI enables access to stored data from everywhere in the network. Especially with the advent of Gigabit Ethernet, it has become affordable to attach iSCSI storage servers simply as remote hard disks to a computer network. In iSCSI terminology, the server providing storage resources is called an iSCSI target, while the client connecting to the server and accessing the resources of the server is called iSCSI initiator.

IVA

Intelligent Video Analysis. Algorithm that detects specific properties and the behavior of objects in a scene monitored by a video camera and from this generates alarm events that, in turn, can be processed in a CCTV system. Recording with IVA settings activated is a precondition to be able to selectively and quickly search through video material later. IVA makes it possible to capture and evaluate directional movement of objects in such a way that false alarms are prevented to a large extent. IVA adapts automatically to changing environmental conditions and is therefore largely non-sensitive to perturbing influences such as rain and tree movement. Especially when used for forensic search, IVA allows for filtering moving objects by their color specifications. With the aid of IVA algorithm extensive video material can be searched selectively for objects with specific color properties.

LDAP

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol. Network protocol running over TCP / IP that allows accessing directories. A directory can be for example a list of user groups and their access rights. Bosch Video Management System uses it to get access to the same user groups as MS Windows or another enterprise user management system.

Logbook

Container for logging all events in Bosch Video Management System.

Logical Tree

Tree with a customized structure of all the devices. The Logical Tree is used in the Operator Client to select cameras and other devices. In the Configuration Client, the "Full Logical Tree" is

configured (on the Maps and Structure page) and tailored for each user group (on the User Groups page).

LUN

Logical Unit Number. Used in the iSCSI environment to address an individual disk drive or a virtual partition (volume). The partition is part of a RAID disk array (the iSCSI target).

Management Server

Bosch VMS server managing devices.

Master Control Software

Software used as interface between Bosch Video Management System and an Allegiant device. Version 2.8 or greater is used.

Metadata

Data of a POS or ATM like date and time or bank account number stored with the corresponding video data to provide additional information for evaluation.

MHT

Also called 'Web Archive'. File format that can save all HTML and image files of an Internet site in one file. To avoid problems we recommend to create MHT files with Internet Explorer 7.0 or higher only.

MPEG-4

Motion Picture Expert Group. Standard for encoding (compressing) digital audio and video for multimedia applications.

MSS

Maximum Segment Size. The largest amount of data, specified in bytes, that a computer or communications device can handle in a single, unfragmented piece.

MTU

Maximum Transmission Unit. Describes the maximum amount of data (in bytes) that can be transferred without being fragmented.

Multicast

Communication between a single transceiver and multiple receivers on a network by distribution of a single data stream on the network to a number of receivers in a defined group. Requirement for multicast operation is a multicast compliant network with implementation of the UDP protocol and the IGMP protocol.

Network monitoring

Measurement of network related values and evaluation of these values against configurable thresholds.

NVR

Bosch Network Video Recorder; computer in the Bosch Video Management System storing audio and video data, acting as Failover NVR, or as Redundant NVR. This NVR is different from the VIDOS NVR which can be integrated in Bosch Video Management System.

OID

Object Identifier. Term in the SNMP environment. Determines a MIB variable.

Operator Client

Component of Bosch Video Management System that provides the user interface for system monitoring and operation.

OSD

On-screen Display: Menus are shown on the display monitor.

Port

1) On computer and telecommunication devices, a port (noun) is generally a specific place for being physically connected to some other device, usually with a socket and plug of some kind. Typically, a personal computer is provided with one or more serial ports and usually one parallel port. 2) In programming, a port (noun) is a "logical connection place" and specifically, using the Internet protocol, TCP/IP, the way a client program specifies a particular server program on a computer in a network. Higher-level applications that use TCP/IP such as the Web protocol, Hypertext Transfer Protocol, have ports with preassigned numbers. These are known as "wellknown ports" that have been assigned by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). Other application processes are given port numbers dynamically for each connection. When a service (server program) initially is started, it is said to bind to its designated port number. As any client program wants to use that server, it also must request to bind to the designated port number. Port numbers are from 0 to 65535. Ports 1 to 1023 are reserved for use by certain privileged services. For the HTTP service, port 80 is defined as a default and it does not have to be specified in the Uniform Resource Locator (URL).

Port mapping

Port mapping allows remote computers to connect to a specific computer or service within a private local area network (LAN).

POS

Point of sale.

Primary NVR

Computer in the Bosch Video Management System environment. A Primary NVR stores audio and video data.

PTZ camera

Camera with pan, tilt, and zoom function.

RADIUS server

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service: a client/server protocol for the authentication, authorization and accounting of users with dial-up connections on a computer network. RADIUS is the de-facto standard for central authentication of dial-up connections via Modem, ISDN, VPN, Wireless LAN (see 802.1x) and DSL.

RAID

Redundant array of independent disks. Used for organizing two or more hard disks as if they were one drive. On such a drive data is shared or replicated. This is used to achieve greater capacity, reliability, and speed.

Recording Schedule

Used for scheduling recording and for scheduling some events like starting backup or limiting log on. Recording Schedules cannot have gaps or overlaps. It also determines the video recording quality.

Redundant NVR

Computer in the Bosch Video Management System environment. Records the same video and audio data as the Primary NVR. A Primary NVR can have maximum one Redundant NVR.

Reference image

A reference image is continuously compared with the current video image. If the current video image in the marked areas differs from the reference image, an alarm is triggered. This allows you to detect tampering that would otherwise not be detected, for example if the camera is turned.

Rewind time

Number of seconds in the past when an Image pane is switched to instant playback.

RTSP

Real Time Streaming Protocol. A network protocol which allows to control the continuous transmission of audio-visual data or software over IP-based networks.

Server Lookup

Access method for a user of Configuration Client or Operator Client to sequentially connect to multiple system access points. A system access point can be a Management Server or an Enterprise Management Server.

SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol. IP based protocol that allows to get information from networking devices (GET), to set parameters on network devices (SET) and to be notified about certain events (EVENT).

SNTP

Simple Network Time Protocol is a simplified version of NTP (see NTP). SNTP can be used when the ultimate performance of the full NTP implementation described in RFC 1305 is not needed or justified. SNTP version 4 is described in RFC 2030 (see RFC).

Task Schedule

Used for scheduling events which can occur in Bosch Video Management System, for example executing a Command Script. In Events you assign Task Schedules to events. For scheduling events you can also use Recording Schedules. With a standard Task Schedule you configure time periods for every day of the week, for holidays, and for exception days. With a recurring Task Schedule you configure recurring time periods. They can recur every day, every week, every month, or every year.

Timeline

Part of the Bosch Video Management System user interface. Displays lines as graphical representations of the recordings of the selected cameras. The Timeline allows you to navigate through recorded videos.

Trap

Term in the SNMP environment for an unrequested message from a monitored device (agent) to the network monitoring system (manager) about an event in this device.

Trunk line

Analog outputs of an analog matrix that are connected to an encoder device. Thereby matrix video sources can be used in the Bosch Video Management System.

URI

Uniform Resource Identifier. String for identifying a network resorce. Each URI consists of scheme, authority, path, query, fragment. Only scheme and fragment are mandatory. Example:

http:<scheme>//example.com<authority>/over/ therepath>?name=ferret<query>#nose<fragment>

User group

User groups are used to define common user attributes, such as permissions, privileges and PTZ priority. By becoming a member of a group, a user automatically inherits all the attributes of the group.

Video resolution

Specification of horizontal and vertical pixels transferred with video signals. PAL: 1CIF = 352 x 288 2CIF = 704 x 288 4CIF = 704 x 576 QCIF = 176 x 144 NTSC 1CIF = 352 x 240 2CIF = 704 x 240 4CIF = 704 x480 QCIF = 176 x120 HD 720p = encoded 1280 x 720 1080p = encoded 1920 x 1080

Video Streaming Gateway

Virtual device that allows integrating Bosch cameras, ONVIF cameras.

VIDOS NVR

VIDOS Network Video Recorder. Software that stores the audio and video data of IP encoders on a RAID 5 disk array or any other storage medium. VIDOS NVR provides functions for playback and retrieval of the recorded video. You can integrate cameras in your Bosch Video Management System that are connected to a VIDOS NVR computer.

Virtual input

Used for forwarding events from third-party systems to Bosch Video Management System.

VRM

Video Recording Manager. Software package in Bosch Video Management System which manages storing video (MPEG-4 SH++ and H.264) and audio data on iSCSI devices in the network. VRM maintains a database containing the recording source information and a list of associated iSCSI drives. VRM is realized as a service running on a computer in the Bosch Video Management System network. VRM does not store data itself but distributes storage capacities on iSCSI devices to the encoders, while handling load balancing between multiple iSCSI devices. VRM streams playback video and audio data from iSCSI to Operator Clients.

WAN

Wide Area Network.

Index

A	initial camera, 88
access denied	OSD, 88
Allegiant CCL emulation, 168	quad view, 88
accessing the Help, 12	single view, 88
acquire PTZ control, 124	startup camera, 88
activate, 125	archive, 77
Bosch Video Management System, 56	ARM firmware, 214
previous configuration, 126	aspect ration 16
activation, 58	9, 121
configuration, 125	ATM POS device, 81
delayed, 125, 138	Audio Intercom functionality, 240
Activation Key , 138	Authorization Number , 138
add Bosch Allegiant input alarm, 132	automatic alarm popup behavior, 29
add Bosch ATM/POS bridge, 131	automatic display of alarms, 29
add BVIP decoder, 70	automatic recording mode, 170
add BVIP encoder, 31, 70, 82, 156, 157, 171, 173	automatic relogon, 125
add pool:VRM, 63	automatic restart, 125
alarm map, 225	В
alarm message, 185	_
alarm mode stamping, 185	backup NVR, 148
alarm priority, 124	•
alarm recording, 225	basic configuration, 64 Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, 32, 33, 36, 81, 85, 154, 166
alarm recording mode, 215	
alarm recording time (NVR), 225	Bosch IntuiKey Keyboard, 33
alarm sequence, 225	Bosch Script API help, 114
alarms	Bosch Video Management System, 15
sort order, 225	activate, 56 GUI language, 245
Allegiant	licensing, 56
CCL emulation, 82, 90	Online Help, 12
control channel, 39, 41	overview, 15
firmware version, 32	update, 244
Network Host program, 40	BVIP decoder:add, 70
PTZ camera, 215	BVIP device
Satellite System, 41	password, 183
too many cameras, 246	Web page, 183
Allegiant CCL commands, 41	BVIP encoder:add, 31, 70, 82, 156, 157, 171, 173
Allegiant CCL emulation	DVII elicoder.add, 51, 70, 62, 150, 157, 171, 175
access denied, 168	
Allegiant file, 246	
Allegiant matrix, 81, 86, 152	
all-in-one system, 20	
analog matrix, 152	
analog monitor group, 15, 75, 81, 83, 87, 88, 140,	
155, 158, 225, 228	
add, 83	
controlled by workstations, 87, 140	
default, 83	

C	D
CABAC, 140, 218	data sheet, 17
camera mode, 139, 217	DCZ keyboard, 83, 166
camera name stamping, 184	decoder
camera round, 207	Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, 85
camera round, 94, 209	decoupled, 58
camera sequence, 207	default analog monitor group, 83
camera sequence , 94, 209	default configuration, 64
CCL emulation, 90	default IP address, 143
CCTV keyboard, 83	delayed activation, 125, 138
connection loss, 245	delete user, 232
change IP address, 71, 75, 80, 87, 144, 145	device capabilities:update, 70
change network address, 71, 75, 80, 87	device ID, 183
change password, 232	device identification, 183
change pool, 174	device name, 183
CHAP password, 169	Device Tree, 142, 207
chattering sensors, 109, 112	Devices pane, 207
Client Command Script	DiBos
alarm accepted, 227	version, 32
executed on startup, 87, 115	
• • • •	DiBos device, 81
codecs, 104, 214	digital keyboard, 83
Command Script, 207	disconnected, 58
Bosch Script API help, 114	dome camera , 107, 218
export, 115	DSA E-Series, 63, 175
import, 115	dual authorization, 233
Command Script , 94	dual streaming, 154
Commercial Type Number, 138	duplicate IP addresses, 75, 143
Compound Events , 111, 220	duplicating an event, 110
configuration data	DVR device, 30
export, 126	DynDNS, 25
configuration data to OPC	E
export, 127	E-mail device, 81
Configuration Wizard	Encoder
Mobile Video Service, 20	Web page, 183
configure VRM recording, 133	encoder:failover recording mode, 70
conflicts with IP addresses, 75	encoding on NVRs, 142
connecting	Enterprise Management Server, 242
Allegiant matrix and Bosch VMS, 37	Enterprise Management Server, 242 Enterprise System, 20, 59, 128
Bosch IntuiKey keyboard and Bosch VMS, 33	examples, 128
connection string, 140	add Bosch Allegiant input alarm, 132
control of a camera, 133	
control of a camera , 104	add Bosch ATM/POS bridge, 131
copy and paste, 103	configure VRM recording, 133
crash	exception days, 101
Configuration Client, 246	export
Operator Client, 246	Command Script , 115
create	configuration data, 126
Command Script , 114	configuration data to OPC, 127

customized events, 111, 220

F	1
factory default IP address, 75	I/O modules, 82
Failover NVR, 144, 146	identification, 183
failover recording mode, 170	import
encoder, 70	Command Script , 115
filtering, 142, 145, 207, 213, 220, 222, 224, 230	resource files, 93
finding	initial camera, 158
devices, 142, 145, 207, 213, 220, 222, 224, 230	initial device scan, 75
information in the Help , 12	Initiator extension, 184
Firewall, 179	Initiator name, 184
firmware upgrade	Intercom functionality, 240
Bosch IntuiKey keyboard, 36	interface settings
Forensic Search, 87, 134, 154	VIP XD, 85
G	IntuiKey keyboard, 83
global alarm settings, 113	IP address
GUI language, 245	change, 71, 75, 80, 87, 144, 145
	conflict, 75
Н	duplicate, 75
H.264, 140, 218	duplicates, 143
H.264 BP, 214	iPad, 90, 168
H.264 BP+, 214	iPhone, 90, 168
H.264 deblocking filter, 140, 218	IQN mapping, 64
H.264 MP, 214	iSCSI device, 64
H.264 MP Low Latency, 214	iSCSI password, 169
HD cameras, 121	iSCSI storage pool, 28, 169
help, 12, 13	iSCSI storage system, 28
help , 12	K
holidays, 101	KBD Universal XF keyboard, 32, 33, 81, 154
hot spots, 207	keep protected recordings, 148
HTML files, 207	
	L
	language, 245
	Configuration Client, 140
	Operator Client, 231
	license, 58
	licensing
	Bosch Video Management System, 56
	Stratus server, 56
	link to map , 96
	local drive, 149
	log file information, 198
	Logbook database, 140
	connection string, 140
	logging, 109, 110, 112
	Logging, 170
	Logical Tree, 92, 228

M

Management Server, 17, 20, 58
manual recording, 225
manual recording time (NVR), 225
map link, 96
maps, 207
Master server, 169
menu commands, 136
Mobile Video Service, 20, 30
move device, 65, 68, 72
multi monitor mode, 121
multicast, 179
multi-select, 92

N

network address change, 71, 75, 80, 87 network monitoring device, 81 network scan, 144 new DiBos devices, 85, 151 NVR, 17 backup, 148 local drive, 149 remove, 77

0

offline, 58, 232
online application Help, 12
ONVIF
stream, 180
token, 180
OPC Server, 244
Operator Client, 15, 92

P

password, 183 password change, 232 peripheral device, 81 permissions, 92, 207 pool:change, 174 pool:move device, 65, 68, 72 pool:VRM, 63, 174 pooling, 28, 169 port forwarding, 25 port mapping, 25, 140 post-event time, 215 post-event time, 216 pre-event time, 215 pre-event time, 216 previous configuration, 126 Primary NVR, 144, 146 printing the Help, 13 profile, 139, 217 PTZ blocking, 124, 235, 241 PTZ camera Allegiant, 215 PTZ camera, 107, 218 PTZ control blocking, 124, 235, 241 push-to-talk, 240

Q

quad view, 88, 159 Quality of Service, 203

recording mode

routed access, 143

R

automatic, 170 failover, 170 Recording preferences, 188 recording quality, 139, 217 Recording Table, 213 Redundant NVR, 78, 146 refresh states, 136, 145 Release Notes, 17 remote access, 25, 59, 61, 129, 140 remove NVR, 77 remove user, 232 replace content, 93 resource files import, 93 resource files, 93

S

scan across subnets, 140 in subnets, 140 scan for conflicting IP addresses, 75, 143 scan network, 75, 144 sequence, 209 Server initiator name, 169 Server Lookup, 61 Server name, 169 Server Network, 59, 61, 128 SMS device, 81 software package, 58 software update, 244 sort order alarms, 225 states, 136, 145 Stratus server licensing, 56 stream, 216 system access, 19 system requirements, 17

T

Target data rate, 139, 218 time stamping, 185 time zone, 14 token, 180 too many Allegiant cameras, 246 transcoding service, 90, 168

system structures, 18

U

unreliable network, 168
update, 244
update:device capabilities, 70
user
delete, 232
remove, 232
user event button, 110

V

VCA, 189
VIDOS NVR, 84
VIP X1600 XFM4, 140, 218
VIP XD, 32
half-duplex mode, 85
interface settings, 85
quad view, 88
VIPX firmware, 214
virtual input, 81
VPN, 25
VRM storage pool, 28, 169
VRM:add pool, 63
VRM:pool, 63, 174

W

WAN, 25, 140 Web client, 90 WLAN, 90, 168 workstation, 87, 140

Bosch Sicherheitssysteme GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Ring 5 85630 Grasbrunn Germany

www.boschsecurity.com

© Bosch Sicherheitssysteme GmbH, 2013